



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

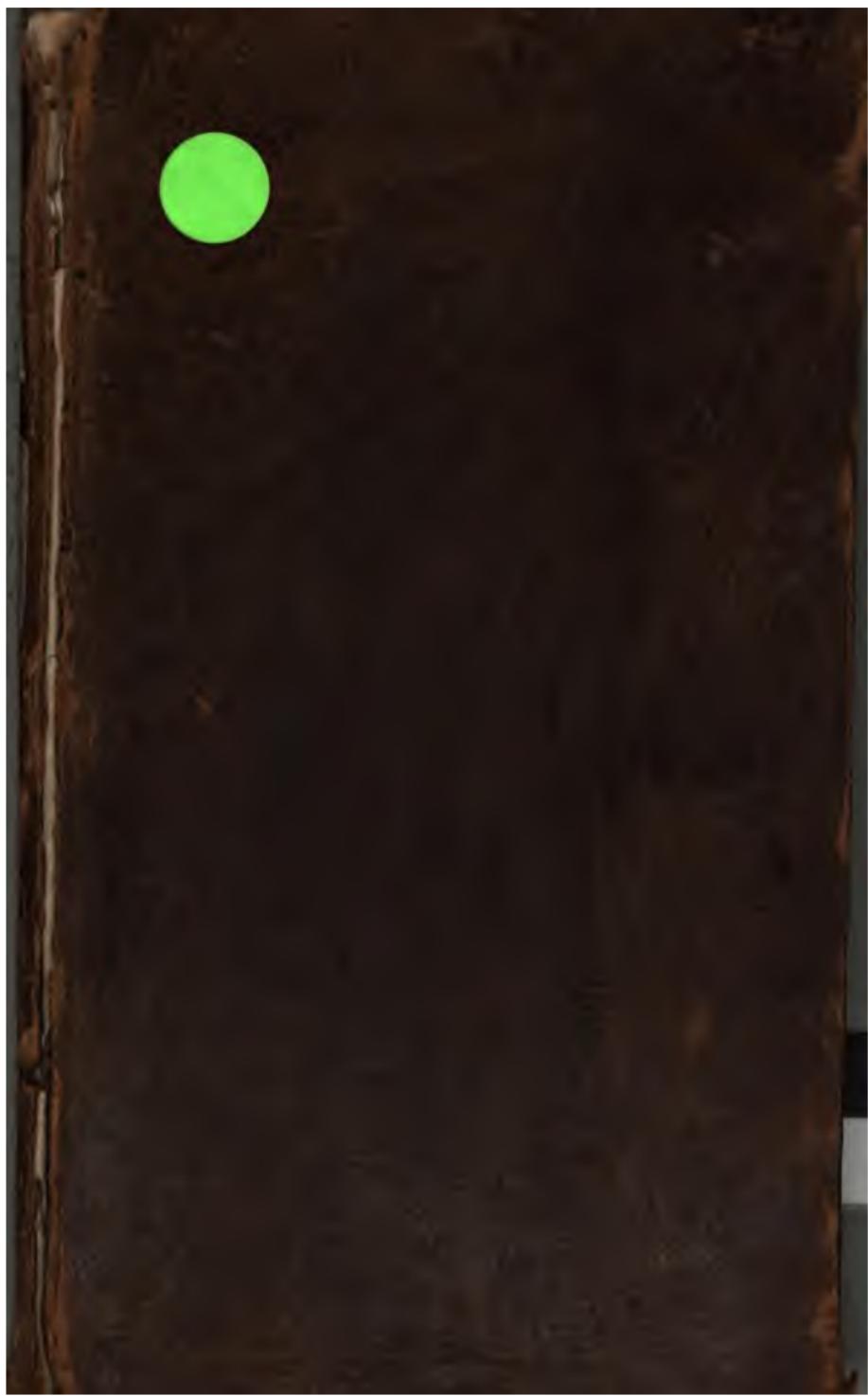
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

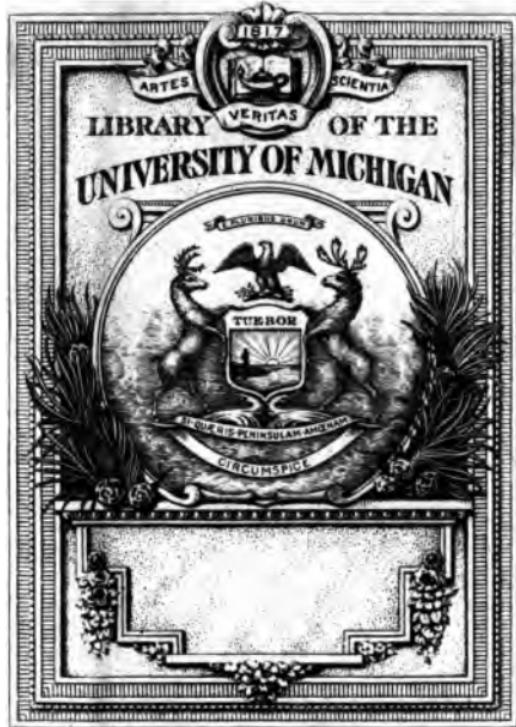
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

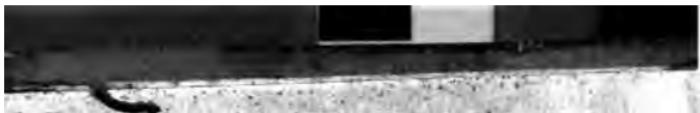




870.5

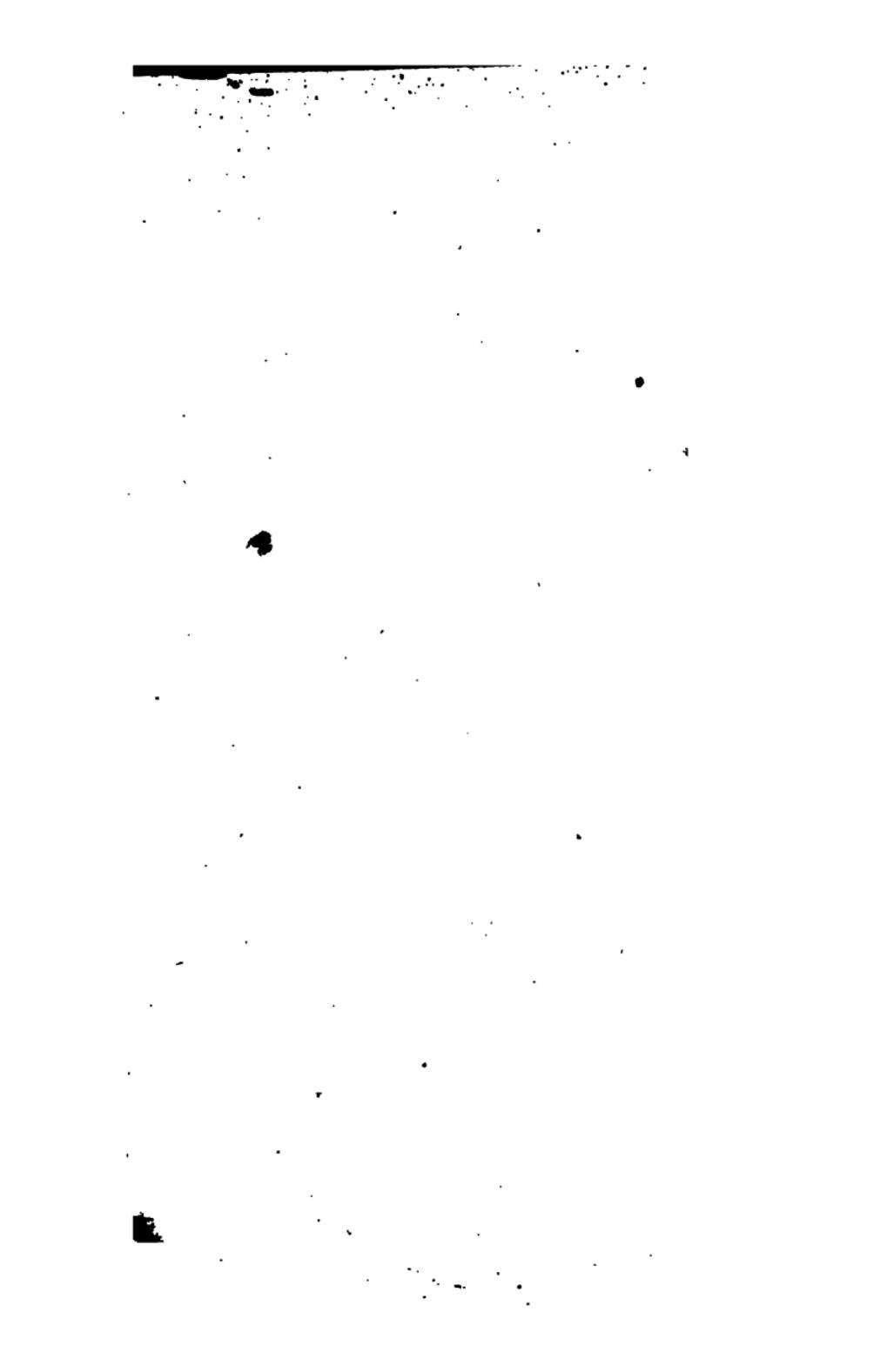
R914

1755



5





THE  
RUDIMENTS  
*William* OF THE *Harrow*  
**Latin Tongue;**  
*This Book is 1762.*  
**A plain and easy Introduction**  
TO  
**Latin Grammar;**

WHEREIN

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE  
are methodically digested both in EN-  
GLISH and LATIN.

WITH

Useful NOTES and Observations, explaining the  
TERMS of GRAMMAR, and further improving  
its RULES.

---

By THO: RUDDIMAN, M.A.

---

The Thirteenth Edition corrected.

EDINBURGH:  
Printed and sold by the AUTHOR, and the Book-  
sellers there. M. DCC. LV.

---

*100 7 119*





O.S.9.34  
Evelyn  
Gal. 201  
Sear University  
5-8-1934

T H E

# P R E F A C E.

M O N G the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways insufficient in respect to the End proposed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; that the other is defective particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and

contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make enter with more Ease and Familiarity int Mind. This is the End I had in View: what Success it has been prosecuted, is a vince for others, not me, to determine. Ever, if any thing inclines me to hop Acceptance in the World, it is owing to kind Assistance I have had from time to of the above mentioned and other Ge men, as the Duty of their respective Emp ments would permit them. What disce ged me most in this Undertaking, was different Opinions of *Grammarians*, the sharp Contests and Disputes they had about the Method of *Instruction*, the most proper Way to communicate *Latin* Tongue to others with the greatest cility and Expedition. It would be almo endless Task to reckon up the vari Schemes that have been projected for Purpose: Therefore I shall engage no far in this Subject, than as it seems necessary give my Reader a clear and distinct Vic the Reasons that determined me to the thod I haye followed.

I have long observed, that those of Country, whose Business it is to dire& Studies of Youth, are greatly divided & *what an Introduction to Latin Gram*

---

## The P R E F A C E. v

properly to contain, and in what Lan-  
guage its Precepts should be conveyed. Some  
have contracted it into as narrow Limits  
as possible, and not to burden the Memo-  
ry of the Learner with any thing but what  
is essential and absolutely necessary; while  
others contend that this is too general, and  
insufficient to direct his Practice, without  
the addition of more particular Rules. Al-  
though the greater Part incline to have the  
Principles of Grammar communicated  
in the own Language, there are not a few,  
of these some Persons of Distinction, who  
are ill for retaining them in *Latin*, which,  
attended at first with more Difficulty,  
leaves (in their Judgment) a more lasting Im-  
pression on the Mind, and carries the Learner  
directly to the Habit of speaking *Latin*, a  
Practice much used in our Schools. It  
was next to an Impossibility to satisfy  
any different Opinions: However the  
Method I have taken seems to bid fairest for  
success. I have reduced the Substance of these  
sentences into a Sort of *Text*, and have  
given the *Latin* an *English* Version, leaving  
the Master to his own Choice and Discretion  
as to use. And that none may complain  
that the *Text* is too compendious, I have  
added large *Notes*, which, I humbly con-  
ceive will supply that Defect.

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, of which perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious, that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the Notes than the Nature of a *Rudiment's* seemed to require: But as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar; and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them, with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more which has considerably encreased them, viz. the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns, Pronouns and Verbs*, which I judged useful on a double Account; *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive from the Language we ourselves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin Tongue*, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my undertaking, all I shall lay of the particular management of it, is, that I have laboured along to render every Thing as plain and sy as I possibly could, considering with a under Regard for whose Benefit it is design-

I have consulted the best *Grammarians* both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting myself with their bare Authority, I frequently had Re-  
source to the Fountain itself, I mean, the pu-  
bst Writers of the *Latin Tongue*. As thus  
have been sollicitous to avoid *Error*, so I  
ave been cautious not to incur the Censure  
f having affected *Novelty*, and therefore  
ave receded no farther from the common  
*systems* than I think they have receded from  
Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*,  
which have so long obtained in the Schools,  
ho' sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as  
I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my  
own Way. That I might lay no more Weight  
on the Memories of Children than they could  
well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as  
small a Number as the Subject would allow  
of, and conceived them in as few Words as  
was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to  
the Industry of the Teacher to explain them  
more fully, as he shall find necessary, with

out which no *Rules* can be sufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wished; but I frankly own, that I do not see how it can be made much shorter without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have subjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, consisting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Discretion of the Master shall direct him.

THE



THE  
RUDIMENT S  
OF THE  
**Latin Tongue:**  
OR  
*A plain and easy Introduction*  
TO  
**Latin Grammar.**

---

PARS PRIMA.  
*De Literis & Sylla-  
bis.*

*Magister.*  
**Q**UOT sunt Literæ apud  
Latinos?

*Discipulus.* Quinque & vi-  
ginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,*  
*k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u,*  
*v, x, y, z.*

*M.* Quomodo dividuntur?  
*D.* In Vocales & Conso-  
nantes.

*M.* Quot sunt Vocales?  
*D.* Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

PART FIRST.  
*Of Letters and  
Syllables.*

*Master.*  
**H**OW many Letters are  
there among the La-  
tins?

*Scholar.* Five and twenty;  
*a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k,*  
*l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v,*  
*x, y, z.*

*M.* How are they divided?  
*S.* Into Vowels and Conso-  
nantes.

*M.* How many Vowels are  
there?  
*S.* Six; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

## 2 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue, Part I

M. Quot sunt consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. Quot sunt diphthongi?

D. Quinque; ae, [vel æ] oe, [vel œ] au, eu, ei; ut aetas, vel ætas, poena, vel pœna, audio, enge, hei.

M. How many Consonants are there?

S. Nineteen, b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. How many Diphthongs are there?

S. Five; ae, [or æ] oe [or œ] au, eu, ei; as aetas, or ætas, poena, or pœna, audio, enge, hei.

### N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of speaking any Language rightly; as Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.

*Latin Grammar* is The Art of speaking rightly the *Latin Tongue*.

The RUDIMENTS of that Grammar Are plain and easy Instructions, teaching Beginners the first Principles, or the most common and necessary Rules of *Latin*.

The Rudiments may be reduced to these four Heads, I. Treating of Letters. II. Of Syllables. III. Of Words. IV. Of Sentences.

These are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A Letter is a Mark or Character representing an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally Greek, and H by some is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the J. called *Jod* [or Je] and the V. called *Van*, two Letters distinct from I and U, because not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; J sounding like G before E, and V almost like F.

A Vowel is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itself.

A Consonant is a Letter that cannot sound without a Vowel.

A Syllable is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the six Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Consonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the most Part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it: Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwise, viz. 1. When U with any other Vowel comes after G, Q or S, as in Lingua, Qui, Suadeo; where the Sound of the U vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or double Vowel.

A Diphthong is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of Diphthongs three are Proper, viz. au, eu, ei, in which both Vowels are heard; and two Improper, viz. æ, œ, in which the a and o are not heard, but they are pronounced as e simple.

Some, not without Reason, to these five Diphthongs, add other three: as, ai in *Maia*, oi in *Troia*, yi or ui in *Harpia* or *Harpia*.

## Part II. of WORDS. 3

### PARS SECUNDA.

#### De Dictionibus.

M. Q UOT sunt Partes Orationis?

D. Octo; Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Coniunctio.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Coniunctio.

### PART SECOND.

#### Of WORDS.

M. H OW many Parts of Speech are there?

S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.

M. How many are declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are indeclinable?

S. Likewise four; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A Word, [Vox or dicitio] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight Classes called Parts of Speech: But some comprise them all under three Classes, viz. Noun, Verb, and Adverb. Under Noun they comprehend also Pronoun and Participle; and under Adverb also Preposition, Interjection and Conjunction. Others to these add a fourth Class, viz. Ad noum, comprehending Adjectives under it, and restricting Noun to Substantives only. These by some are otherwise called Names, Qualities, Affirmations and Particles.

The declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call Declension or declining of Words. But the indeclinable Part continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the Ending or Termination of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call Accidentia, i.e. The Accidents of Words.

These Accidents are commonly reckoned Six, viz. Gender, Case, Number, Mood, Tense, and Person. Of these, Gender and Case are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, viz. Noun, Pronoun and Participle; an Mood, Tense and Person are peculiar to one of them, viz. Verb: And Number is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That Person may also be said to belong to Noun or Pronoun: But then it is not properly an Accident, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

## 4 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE 2. That *Figure*, *Species*, and *Comparison*, which some Students do not properly come under that Name, because they have a different Signification from what they had before. See Chap.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, Participle, are in a stricter Sense called *Declension* or *Declination* and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

### C A P. I.

#### *De Nominis.*

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus, & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; *Masculinum, Femininum & Neutrum.*

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus & Ablativus.*

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis & Pluralis.*

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta, & Quinta.*

### REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero: & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in Singulari *erumque*, in Plurali *semper*, *similis nominativo*.

### C H A P. II.

#### *Of Nouns.*

M. **H**OW is a Noun named?

S. By *Genders*, *Cases*, *Numbers*.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declinations are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth and Fifth.

### GENERAL RULES.

1. Nouns of the Neuter have the Nominative, Genitive and Vocative alike in Number: And these Cases the Plural end always in *a*.

2. The Vocative for the part in the Singular, *[a]* ways in the Plural, is Nominative.

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluri sunt similes.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent plurali.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

4. Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.

**JOUN** is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of a Thing ; as, *Homo*, a Man ; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Substantive Noun* is, That which signifies the Name of a Thing ; as *Hor*, a Tree ; *Virtus*, Virtue ; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An *Adjective Noun* is that which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing ; as, *Albus*, white, *Felix*, happy ; *Gravis*, heavy. A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways : A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an adjective cannot without a Substantive ; as, I can say *a Stone falls*, but cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense ; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Nonsense : Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing* ; but do not say *A Man Thing*, *A Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Substantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a kind ; as *Virgilius*, a Man's Name ; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name ; *Scotia*, Scotland ; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh ; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Substantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things ; as *Vir*, a Man ; *Femina*, a Woman ; *Regnum*, a Kingdom ; *City*, a City ; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE. That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes Appellative ; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

**GENDER** in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female ; But in a Grammatical Sense, we commonly understand by it, The Fitness that a *Substantive Noun* hath to be fitted to an *Adjective* of such a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shees* the Feminine Gender : But of Things without Life, and, where the Variety of Sex is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the Latin Tongue. Besides these three principal Genders there are reckoned also other less principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, viz. The Gender Common to two, the Gender Common to three, and the Doubtful Gender.

I. The Common Gender, or Gender common to two, [Genus commune Commune duūm] is Masculine and Feminine ; and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes ; as, *Patens*, a Father or Mother ; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The Gender Common to three, [Genus commune trium] is Masculine, Feminine and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter ; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter ; as, *Mollis*, *molle*,

## 6 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to  
of the three Genders; as *Prudens*, *wise*.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in other; as *Dies*, a Day, *Masc.* or *Fem.* *Vulgus* the Rabble, *Masc.* or [We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the Epicene or Pronoun Gender; for, properly speaking, there is no such Gender distinct from three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed Epicene Nouns, the some Names of Animals, in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Creation; as, *Aquila*, an *Eagle*, *Femin.* because it ends in *a*; *Passer*, a *Spa* *Mascul.* because it ends in *er*. (See p. 8. and 11.) So *Homo*, a *Man* or *man*, *Masc.* *Mancipium*, a *Slave*, *Neut.* *Anguis*, a *Serpent*, *Dom*

To distinguish these Genders we make use of these three Words, *hic*, *hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly called *Articles*. *hic* is the Sign of the *Masc.* *hoc* of the *Fem.* *hoc* of the *Neut.* Gender; & *hic* of the Common to two; *bis*, *hic*, *hoc*, of the Common to three aut *hic*; *bis* aut *hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *cado* to fall, because they native fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Catus*: the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one single Thing; as *Homo*, a *1* the *Plural* denotes more things than one; as *Homines*, Men.

---

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of I Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

### The Declension of English Nouns.

I. The *English Language* hath the two *Genders* of *Nature*, viz. *Sculine* and *Feminine*; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE* according to the Difference of their *Sex*: And almost every Thing out Life is called *IT*. But because all the *Adjectives* of this Lan are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Gende

II. The *English*, properly speaking, has no Cases, because there Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but thereof we use some little Words called *ARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun itself: The Partic put before it, or 's after it, makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before makes the *Dative*: The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nomin*. The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH*, *BY*, *IN*, *BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is the *Nominative*; when it follows after a Verb *active*, without a fition intervening, it is called the *Accusative*.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign ['] is not used in the tive *Plural*; as, *Mens Works*, the *Apostles Creed*.

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the *Dative*, and *O* of the *VO* are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLE*

## Part II. Chap. I. of Noun.

7

monly put before Substantive Nouns, *viz.* *A* [ or *An* before a or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

*A* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *a*, that is, *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the *ith This or That*, and *These or Those*.

E 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, surnames, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these ; as, *Man* is mortal, i. e. every Man ; *God abhors Sin*, i. e. all But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have *s*, the *Thames*, the *Britannia*, the *Alps*.

E 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plurals the Indefinite.

E 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the is put before both ; as, *A good Man*, *The good Man* : And the *De* is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood ; *just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

The English hath two Numbers as the Latin, and the Plural is only made by putting an *s* to the Singular ; as *Book*, *Books*.

1. Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *ff*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their ir ; as, *Church-es*, *Brush-es*, *Witness-es*, *Box-es*. Where it is to be l that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the ir Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce*, *ze* ; as, *Faces*, *Ages*, *Houses*, *Mazes*. The Reason of this p from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound , so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. it the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same Reason, of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in theirerson Sing. of the present Tense.

2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves* ; as, *Calf*, *Leaf*, *Leaves*; *Wife*, *Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof*, *Roof*, *Mischief*, *Dwarf*, *Strife*, *Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

3. Some have their Plural in *en* ; as, *Man*, *Men*; *Woman*, *Wo-*  
*bild*, *Children*; *Chick*, *Chicken*; *Brother*, *Brothers* or *Brethren*; (which feldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

4. Some are more irregular ; as, *Dit*, *Dice*; *Mouse*, *Mice*; *Louse*, *Goose*, *Geese*; *Foot*, *Feet*; *Tooth*, *Teeth*; *Penny*, *Pence*; *Sow*, *Sows*, *vine*; *Cow*, *Cows*, and *Kine*.

5. Some are the same in both Numbers ; as, *Sheep*, *Hose*, *Swine*, *Pease*, *Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*; *Mile* and *Miles*; *Horse* and *Horses*.

E, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have *ies* than *ys* in the Plural ; as, *Cherry*, *Cherries*.

An English Noun is thus declined.

A, The

The

Nom.	King,	Nom.	Kings,
Gen. of	King,	Gen. of	Kings,
Dat. to [for]	King,	Dat. to [for]	Kings,
Acc.	King,	Acc.	Kings.
Voc. O	King,	Voc. O.	King
abl. with, from, in, by, King:	{ King,	abl. with, from, in, by,	King

## 8 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

### Prima Declinatio.

M. **Q** uomodo dignoscitur  
Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dati-  
vum singularem in æ Diphthon-  
gon.

M. Quot habet Terminati-  
ones?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es; ut,  
Penna, Penelope,

Penna, a Pen, Fem.  
Sing.

Nom.	penna,	a pen,	Gen.	pennæ,	of a pen,	Dat.	pennæ,	to a pen,	Acc.	pennam,	a pen,	Voc.	penna,	O pen,	Abl.	penna, with a pen:	Nom.	pennæ,	Gen.	pennatum,	Dat.	pennis,	Acc.	pennas,	Voc.	pennæ,	Abl.	pennis,	Terminati-
	pen,	pen,		of pens,	of pens,		to pens,	to pens,		pens,	pens,		O pens,	O pens,		with pens.	pens;	pens;	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	ons.				
	d,	æ,		d,	arum;		æ,	is,		am,	as,		a,	æ,		a,	æ,	d,	æ,	d,	arum;	æ,	is,	am,	as,	a,	æ,	d,	æ,

### The first Declension.

M. **H** OW is the First De-  
clension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dati-  
ve singular in æ Diphthong

M. How many Terminati-  
ons hath it?

S. Four; a, e, as, es; Æ  
neas, Anchises.

Terminati-  
ons.

Nom.	penna,	a pen,	Gen.	pennæ,	of pens,	Dat.	pennæ,	to pens,	Acc.	pennam,	a pen,	Voc.	penna,	O pen,	Abl.	penna, with a pen:	Nom.	pennæ,	Gen.	pennatum,	Dat.	pennis,	Acc.	pennas,	Voc.	pennæ,	Abl.	pennis,	Terminati-
	pen,	pen,		of pens,	of pens,		to pens,	to pens,		pens,	pens,		O pens,	O pens,		with pens.	pens;	pens;	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	pennatum,	ons.				

¶ After the same Manner you may decline Litera, a Letter  
Via, a Way; Galea, an Helmet; Tunica, a Coat; Toga, a Gown

A is a Latin Termination, e, as, and es, are Greek.

Nouns in a and e are Feminine, in as and es Masculine.

RULE, *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddess; *Anim* the Soul, with some others, have more frequently *abut* than *is* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. to distinguish them from Masculines in *us* of the second Declension.

¶ In declining Greek Nouns observe the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in as [and a] have sometimes their Accusative [with the Poets] in an; as, *Æneas*, *Æneam* vel *Ænean*; [*Ossa*, *Ossam* vel *Ossan*]

2. These in es have their Accusative in en, and their Vocative at Ablative in e; as,

Nom. Anchises,	Accus. Anchisen,
Voc. Anchise,	Abl. Anchife.

3. Nouns in e have their Genitive in es, their Accusative in en, the Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in e; as;

Nom. Penelope,	Gen. Penelopes,
Dat. Penelope,	Acc. Penelopen.
Voc. Penelope,	
Abl. Penelope.	

[As to the Dative of Words in e, I have followed Probus and Priscian among the Ancients; Lilly, Alvarus, Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, &c. among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, I have observed three such Datives, viz. *Cubele* in *Vulg.* *Re-*

## Part II. Chap. I. of Noun. 9

3. Penelope in Martial, Epig. XI. 8, 9. and Epigone in Reinesii Syntag. Scrip. Clas. 14. Num. 85. But Diomedes and Dispauter seem to be of opinion, that these Nouns have *z* in their Dative. The Reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing Nouns in e generally follow Greek in all their other Cases, they should follow the Latin in their Dative only—especially since their Ablative, which answers to the Greek Dative, ends in *z*.

As on the contrary, they maintain, that if such Nouns have *z* in their Ablative, it must come from a Nominative in a ; of which there are some Examples yet extant : And then they may likewise have their Accusative in am ; Penelopam, Circam, in Plautus, Lycambam in Terentianus Maurus. Thus elenæ or Helenes, Helenam or Helenen, are frequently to be met with in sets ; who also turn such Words as commonly end in a, into e in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Measure of their Verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in es have sometimes their Nominative and Vocative in a; (whence comes their Genitive and Dative *z*.) And, if Mr. Johnson's Citations are right, both es and e have sometimes their Accusative in em. ]

### *Secunda Declinatio.*

1. Q Uomodo dignoscitur Secunda Declinatio ?

D. Per Genitivum singula- m in i, & Dativum in o.

M. Quot habet Terminatio- nes ?

D. Septem ; er, ir, ur, us, n, os, on ; ut,

Gener, a Son-in-law ; Vir, a Man ; Satur, full ; Dominus, a Lord ; Regnum, a Kingdom ; Synodos, a Synod ; Albion, the land Albion, or Great Britain.

### *The Second Declension.*

M. HOW is the Second Declension known ?

S. By the Genitive singular in i, and Dative in o.

M. How many Terminations hath it ?

S. Seven ; er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on ; as,

Gener, a Son-in-law ; Vir, a Man ; Satur, full ; Dominus, a Lord ; Regnum, a Kingdom ; Synodos, a Synod ; Albion, the land Albion, or Great Britain.

### *Gener, a Son-in-law, Masc.*

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Iom. gener,	Nom. generi,	er, ir, us, i,
en. generi,	Gen. generorum,	i, orum,
Lat. genero,	Dat. generis.	o, is,
Acc. generum,	Acc. generos,	um, os,
Voc. gener,	Voc. generi,	er, ir, e, i,
Abl. genero :	Abl. generis.	o : is.

After the same Manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy ; *Sacer*, a Father-in-law ; *Vir*, a Man, &c. But *Liber*, a Book ; *Magister*, a Master ; *Alexander*, a Man's Name, and most other Substantives in er lose the e before r ; Thus Sing. Num. *Liber*, Gen. *libri*, Dat. *libro*, Accus. *librum*, Abl. *libro*. Plur. Num. *libri*, Gen. *librorum*, &c.

**Dominus, a Lord, Masc.**

Sing.	Plur.	
<i>Nom.</i> dominus, <i>Nom.</i> domini,		Ventus, <i>the</i>
<i>Gen.</i> domini, <i>Gen.</i> dominorum,		Oculus, <i>the</i>
<i>Dat.</i> domino, <i>Dat.</i> dominis,		Fluvius, <i>a</i> <i>1</i>
<i>Acc.</i> dominum, <i>Acc.</i> dominos,		Puteus, <i>a</i> <i>W</i>
<i>Voc.</i> domine, <i>Voc.</i> domini,		Focus, <i>a</i> <i>co</i>
<i>Abl.</i> domino: <i>Abl.</i> dominis.		Rogus, <i>a</i> <i>Fu</i>

**Regnum, a Kingdom, Neut.**

Sing.	Plur.	
<i>Nom.</i> regnum, <i>Nom.</i> regna,		<i>The</i>
<i>Gen.</i> regni, <i>Gen.</i> regnorum,		Templum,
<i>Dat.</i> regno, <i>Dat.</i> regnis,		Ingenium,
<i>Acc.</i> regnum, <i>Acc.</i> regna,		Horreum,
<i>Voc.</i> regnum, <i>Voc.</i> regna,		Canticum,
<i>Abl.</i> regno: <i>Abl.</i> regnis.		Jugum, <i>a</i> <i>1</i>

**R E G U L Æ.**

I. Nominativus in <i>us</i> facit Vocativum in <i>e</i> ; ut, <i>Ventus</i> ,	I. <i>The Nomina</i> <i>Ventus</i> , <i>vente</i> .
II. Propria in <i>ius</i> perdunt <i>us</i> in Vocativo; ut, <i>Georgius</i> ,	II. <i>Proper Name</i> <i>us</i> in the <i>Vocative</i> ; <i>gius</i> , <i>Georgi</i> .

*Filius* hath also *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the V.  
in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *De*

The most common Terminations of the second Declension  
us of the Masc. and um of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in ir of this Declension, viz.  
with its Compounds *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and or  
viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. Os and on at  
minations, and generally changed into us and um in their

These, with other Greek Nouns in us, have sometimes the  
[We have excluded the Termination eus from this Declension  
longing more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *G  
Orpheu*: For when it is of the second Declension, it is e-us  
lables, and so falls under the Termination us; *Orphe-us*, (or  
tracted *Orph ei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*) O

*Tertia Declinatio.* | The Third De  
M. *Quomodo dignoscitur M.* HOW is t  
Tertia Declinatio? | clension

## Part II. Chap. I. of Noun. II

D. Per Genitivum singula-	S. By the Genitive singular in <i>is</i> and Dative in <i>i.</i>
n in <i>is</i> & Dativum in <i>i.</i>	M. How many Terminations or final Syllabas finales?
M. Quot habet Terminatio-	S. Seventy and one.
s seu syllabas finales?	M. How many final Letters hath it?
D. Septuaginta & unam.	S. Eleven; <i>a, e, o, c, d,</i> <i>n, r, s, t, x; ut,</i> <i>l, n, r, s, t, x; as,</i> <i>Diadema, a Crown;</i> <i>Sedile, a Seat;</i> <i>Sermo, Speech;</i> <i>Lac,</i> <i>ilk;</i> <i>David, a Man's Name;</i> <i>Animal, a living Creature;</i> <i>Ceten, a Comb;</i> <i>Pater, a Father;</i> <i>Rupes, a Rock;</i> <i>Caput, the</i> <i>head;</i> <i>Rex, a King.</i>
M. Quot habet literas fina-	S. Sermo, Speech, Masc.
? h	<i>Sing.</i> <i>Plur.</i> <i>Terminations.</i>
om. sermo, <i>Nom.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &amp;c. es, a,</i>
en. sermonis, <i>Gen.</i> sermonum,	<i>is, um, ium,</i>
at. sermoni, <i>Dat.</i> sermonibus,	<i>i, ibus,</i>
cc. sermonem, <i>Acc.</i> sermones,	<i>em, es, a,</i>
rc. sermo, <i>Voc.</i> sermones,	<i>a, e, o, &amp;c. es, a,</i>
bl. sermone: <i>Abl.</i> sermonibus.	<i>e, i: ibus.</i>

Sedile, a Seat, Neut.

Sing.	Plur.
'om. sedile, <i>Nom.</i> sedilia,	
en. sedilis, <i>Gen.</i> sedilium,	
at. sedili, <i>Dat.</i> sedilibus,	
cc. sedile, <i>Acc.</i> sedilia,	
rc. sedile, <i>Voc.</i> sedilia,	
bl. sedili: <i>Abl.</i> sedilibus.	

As Sermo, so most Substantives of this Declension in *a, o, c, d, n, t, x,* *er, or, ur, as, es, us;* (except their *Acc.* and *Voc.* when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Number.) Also (when they have more Syllables in their *Gen.* than *Nom.*) all Words in *es,* and most of those in *is.*

Of the final Letters of the third Declension six are peculiar to it, *o, c, l, t, x;* the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s.* The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x.*

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, i, rs, ex.*

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c;* *Lac,* Milk; *Halec,* a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t,* viz. *Caput,* the Head, *Sinciput,* the Forehead; *Occiput,* the Hind-head.

- 1. The Terminations, *er, or, es, o, n,* } Masculine,
  - 2. The Terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys,* } Feminine
  - au, x, and s after a Consonant,* } are
  - 3. The Terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut,* } Neuter.
- ut from these there are many Exceptions.

## Rudiments of the Latin Tongue

RE 1. That for the most Part the Genitive hath a Syllable nominative; and where it is otherwise they generally end in *e*:  
RE 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* runthrough the other Cases (except the Accusative and Vc  
-uters;) as, *Thema*, -*atis*, -*ati*, -*ate*, a Theme; *Sanguis*, -*gui*  
*-tineris*, a Journey; *Carmen*, -*minis*, a Verse; *Judex*, -*dici*

### R E G U L A E.

Nomina in *e*, & Neutra  
& *ar*, habent *i* in Abla-

Quæ habent *e* tantum in  
ativo, faciunt Genitivum  
alem in *um*.

Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel  
*i* simul, faciunt *um*.

Neutra quæ habent *e* in  
ativo singulari, habent *a* in  
nativo, Accusativo & Vo-  
o plurali.

At quæ habent *i* in Abla-  
, faciunt *ia*.

### R U L E S

1. Nouns in *e*, an  
in *al* and *ar*, have *i* in  
lative.

2. These which have  
in the Ablative, make  
nitive plural in *um*.

3. These which have  
*e* and *i* together, make

4. Neuters which have  
their Ablative sing.  
the Nominative,  
and Vocative plural.

5. But these which have  
the Ablative, make in

#### 1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accusative singular.

Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accusative; as *Vitis*, *vir*, the Cough; *Sitis*, Thirst; *Buris*, the Beam of a Plough; *Amphis*, a Mason's Rule. To which add Name; as, *Tybris*, *Thamesis*, which the Poets sometimes make Some in *is* have *em* or *in*; as, *Navis*, a Ship; *Puppis*, the Ax; *Clavis*, a Key; *Febris*, a Fever; *Pelvis*, a Baso; *Turris*, a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim*, &c.

#### 2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative singular.

Nouns which have *im* in the Accusative have *i* in the Ablative, *vi*, &c. These that have *em* or *in* have *e* or *i*; as, *vel navim*, *nave vel navi*.

*Canalis*, *Vestis*, *Bipennis*, have *i*: *Avis*, *Amnis*, *Ignis*, *Imber*, with some others, have *e* or *i*; but most common These Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Fas*, *Jubar*, *Nectar* and *has* *sale*.

#### 3: EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

Nouns of one Syllable in *as*, *is*, and *s* with a Consonant; *ium*; as, *As*, *assum*; *Lis*, *litium*; *Urbs*, *urbium*.

Also Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in their Genitive *um*; *Rupes*, *rupium*. Except, *Panis*, *Canis*, *Vates*, and *I* To which add *Cero*, *Cor*, *Cos*, *Dos*, *Mus*, *Nix*, *Nox*, *Linter*, *E*, That when the Genitive plural ends in *um*, thilf, instead of *es*, has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis*, *particis*, *muncis*, *partes*.

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have sometimes their Genitive in *os*. And these are such as increase their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, in *Arcadian*; *Briseis*, *-idis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a Vowel before it; *Heresis*, *eos* vel *ios*, an Heresy. 3. To these add *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE. That is is more frequent, except in the second Kind, and Patronymicks of the first.

II. 1. Greek Words which increase their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, i. e. with a Consonant before it) have frequently their Accusative sing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampus*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; also *Minos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Heresis*, *-eos*, *heresim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, Masculines have their Accusative for the most part in *in* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris*, *Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briseis*, *Briseidem* vel *Briseida*.

III. Feminines in *o* shave *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in the other Cases, as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns infrequently throw away's in their Vocative; as, *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on*) in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammaton*, *Hereseon*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poëma*, *Poëmatis*, because of old they said *Poëmatum*, *-ti*. *Bos* has *boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

*Quarta Declinatio.*

M. *Q* uomodo dignoscitur  
Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum singula-  
rem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio-  
nes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; *ut*,

*Fructus*, *Fruit*;

*Masc.*

*Fructus*, *Fruit*;

*Nom.* *fructus*,

*Gen.* *fructus*,

*Dat.* *fructui*,

*Acc.* *fructum*,

*Voc.* *fructus*,

*Abl.* *fructu*:

*The Fourth Declension.*

M. *H*OW is the Fourth De-  
clension known?

S. By the Genitive singular  
in *us*, and the Dative in *ui*.

M. How many Terminati-  
ons hath it?

S. Two; *us* and *u*; *as*,

*Cornu*, *a Horn*.

*Terminations.*

*us*, *us*,

*us*, *uum*,

*us*, *ibus*,

*um*, *us*,

*us*, *us*,

*u* : *ibus*.

## 14 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue

### Cornu, an Horn, Neut.

<b>Nom.</b> cornu, <b>Gen.</b> cornu, <b>Dat.</b> cornu, <b>Acc.</b> cornu, <b>Voc.</b> cornu, <b>Abl.</b> cornu :	<b>Nom.</b> cornua, <b>Gen.</b> cornuum, <b>Dat.</b> cornibus, <b>Acc.</b> cornua, <b>Voc.</b> cornua, <b>Abl.</b> cornibus.	<i>As Fru tus the Cou nus, the Hau sus, a Fall Cor the Kuee ; Tonitru, T</i>
---	---	--

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

**RULE.** Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Abl. viz. *Arctus*, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake, *Acus*, a tooth, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe;

**NOTE.** That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to and were declined as *Grus*, *gruis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus*, *fructuem*, *fructus*: *Fructus*, *fructum*, *fructibus*, *fructus*, *fructus*. So that all the Cases are contracted except the Dative Genitive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive tant; as on the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u* The blessed Name JE-

*Domus, an House, Fem. is tha  
bus is thus declined.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

<b>Nom.</b> IESUS, <b>Gen.</b> IESU, <b>Dat.</b> IESU, <b>Acc.</b> IESUM, <b>Voc.</b> IESU, <b>Abl.</b> IESU.	<b>Nom.</b> domus, <b>Gen.</b> domus, <i>v.</i> -mi, <b>Dat.</b> domui, <i>v.</i> -mo, <b>Acc.</b> domum, <b>Voc.</b> domus, <b>Abl.</b> domo;	<i>Nom. domu: Gen. domoi Dat. domit Acc. domos Voc. domus Abl. domib</i>
--	---	--

[**NOTE.** That the Genitive domi is only used when it signifies domo the Dative is found in Horace, Epist. I. 10. 13.]

### Quinta Declinatio.

**M.** *Q*uomodo dignoscitur  
Quinta Declinatio?

**D.** Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in *ei*.

**M.** Quot habet Terminatio-

nies?

**D.** Unam, nempe, *es*; ut,

Res, a Thing, Fem.

**Nom.** res,

**Gen.** rei,

**Dat.** rei,

**Acc.** rem,

**Voc.** res,

**Abl.** re:

### The Fifth Dec-

**M.** *H*OW is th-

cension

**S.** By the Geniti-

ve singular in *ei*.

**M.** How many-

ons hath it?

**S.** One, namely,

Terminations,

*es*, *es*,

*ei*, *erum*,

*ei*, *ebus*,

*em*, *es*,

*es*, *es*,

*ei*, *ebus*.

## Part II. Chap. I. of NOUN. 15

Nouns of the fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith;

*Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies* Rest; which are of the Third.

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

### General Remarks on all the Declensions.

i. The Genitive Plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as, *Calicolum*, *Decum*, *Mensum*, *Currum*; for *Calico*, *Decrum*, *Mensum*, *Curruum*.

ii. When the Genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tuguri* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulae* for *aula* in the First, and *Fide* for *fides* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

### Declinatio Adjectivorum.

A. Djectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæ Declinationis, vel tertiae tantum.

Omnia adjectiva habentia tres terminaciones (præter (a) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas terminaciones habent, sunt tertiae.

Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (b) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *us*, or *er*; their Feminine always in *a*, and their Neuter always in *um*; as,

B. *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good, *Tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, tender.

D. Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

### Sing.

at. Nom. bon-us,	-a,	-um,	Nom. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,
Gen. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	Gen. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	Dat. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc. bon-um,	-am,	-um,	Acc. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	Voc. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl. bon-o,	-a,	-o:	Abl. bon-is,	-i,	-is.

(a) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *elder*, *salaber*, *vulcer*, *impester*, *equestrer*, *pedester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their *Scilicet* in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*, and Neuter in *e*.

(b) *Forfatur*, *full*, was of old *saturus*.

### The Declension of Adjectives.

Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except eleven) are of the First and Second: But those which have one or two Terminations, are of the Third.

Adjectives of the First and Second have their Masculine in *us*, or *er*; their Feminine always in *a*, and their Neuter always in *um*; as,

### Plur.

## 16 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> ten-er, -era, -erum,	<i>N.</i> ten-eri, -eræ, -era,
<i>G.</i> ten-eri, -eræ, -eri,	<i>G.</i> ten-erorum, -erarum, -erorū
<i>D.</i> ten-ero, -eræ, -ero,	<i>D.</i> ten-eris, -eris, -eris,
<i>A.</i> ten-erum, -eram, -erum,	<i>A.</i> ten-eros, -eras, -era,
<i>V.</i> ten-er, -era, -erum,	<i>V.</i> ten-eri, -eræ, -era,
<i>A.</i> ten-ero, -era, -ero :	<i>A.</i> ten-eris, -eris, -eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Terminative and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *ten* like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera* like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum* like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. de Anal. declin every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, -era, -erū wretched; *liber*, -era, -erum, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *f* Others lose it; as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *mger*, -gra, -grum, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solvus*, alone; *lus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds; *uterque* both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the other or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

*Adjectiva tertiae Declinationis.* | *Adjectives of the third Declension.*

1. *Unius Terminationis.* | 1. Of one Termination.

*Felix*, happy.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> fel-ix, -ix,	<i>N.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icis,
<i>G.</i> fel-icis, -icis,	<i>G.</i> fel-icium, -icium, -iciū
<i>D.</i> fel-ici, -ici,	<i>D.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibū
<i>A.</i> fel-icem, -icem,	<i>A.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icia,
<i>V.</i> fel-ix, -ix,	<i>V.</i> fel-ices, -ices, -icia,
<i>A.</i> fel-ice, <i>vel</i> -ici, &c.	<i>A.</i> fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibū

2. *Duarum Terminationum.* 2. Of two Terminations.  
*Mitis*, mite, meek.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N.</i> mitis, mitis, mite,	<i>N.</i> mites, mites, mites,
<i>G.</i> mitis, mitis, mitis,	<i>G.</i> mitium, mitium, mitium,
<i>D.</i> miti, miti, miti,	<i>D.</i> mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,
<i>A.</i> mitem, mitem, mite,	<i>A.</i> mites, mites, mitia,
<i>V.</i> mitis, mitis, mite,	<i>V.</i> mites, mites, mitia,
<i>A.</i> miti, miti, miti:	<i>A.</i> mitibus, mitibus, mitibus.

Mitior, mitius, meeker.

Plur.

Sing.

,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ores, -öres, -ora;
is,	-oris;	-oris;	G. miti-orum, -orum, -orum;
i,	-ori,	-ori;	D. miti-oribus, -oribus; -oribus;
em,	-orem,	-us;	A. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
,	-ot,	-us,	V. miti-ores, -ores, -ora,
e vel -ori, &c.			A. miti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.

in Terminationum:

3. Of three Terminations:

Acer vel acris, acris, acte, Sharp.

Sing.

'el -cris,	-cris,	-ere,	N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
-cris,	-cris,	-cri,	G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,
-cri,	-cri,	-cre,	D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus;
-crem,	-cre,	-cre,	A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,
'el -cris,	-cris;	-cre,	V. a-cres, -cres, -cria;
-cri,	-cri:		A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.

## È G U L È.

lectiva tertiae Declina-  
bent e vel i in Abla-  
tilari.

si neutrum sit in e,  
habet i tantum.

nitus pluralis definit  
& Neutrum Nominati-  
vus & Vocativi, in

case Comparativa, que  
ostulant.

## R U L È S.

1. Adjectives of the Third  
Declension have e or. i in the  
Ablative Singular.

2. But if the Neuter be in e,  
the Ablative has i only.

3. The Genitive plural ends  
in ium; and the Neuter of the  
Nominative, Accusative and Vo-  
cative in ia.

4. Except Comparatives, which  
require um and a.

## E X C E P T I O N S.

s, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex and Pauper, have s  
tat. Sing. and consequently um in the Gen. Plur.

os, Impos, Confos, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener and Pu-  
Compounds ending in ceps, fex, pes, and corpor; as, Princeps,  
lipes, Tricorp, have um, not ium.

That all these have seldom the Neut. ~~um~~ never almost  
Plur. in the Nom. and Accus. To ~~um~~ and Memor, which  
i and memorum; and Locuples, which has memplium; also, De-  
Hebes, Perpes, Prepes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor; which bear  
be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether  
e am or ium, though I incline most to the former.

## 18 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus*, *vetera*, & *veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plure*, and *plures*, *plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have generally *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as *vitrici ferro*, not *vitrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put substantively, have oftentimes *e*; as, *Affinis*, *Familiaris*, *Rivalis*, *Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match, as, *Cum parc queque suo coēunt*. Ovid.

### Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE Ordinal and Multiplicative Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *Distributive* wants the Singular, as also do the *Cardinal*, except *Unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Plural when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una litera*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as *Uni sex dies*, i. e. One Space of six Days; *Una vestimenta*, i. e. One Suit of Apparel. *Plaut.*

*Duo* and *tres* are declined after this Manner:

<i>Nom.</i> duo,                   duæ,                   duo,	<i>Nom.</i> tres,                   tres,                   tria,
<i>Gen.</i> duorum,               duarum,               duorum,	<i>Gen.</i> trium,               trium,               trium,
<i>Dat.</i> duobus,               duabus,               duobus,	<i>Dat.</i> tribus,               tribus,               tribus,
<i>Acc.</i> duos vel-o,         duas,                 duo,	<i>Acc.</i> tres,               tres,                 tria,
<i>Voc.</i> duo,                 duæ,                 duo,	<i>Voc.</i> tres,               tres,                 tria,
<i>Abl.</i> duobus,               duabus,               duobus.	<i>Abl.</i> tribus,               tribus,               tribus.
<i>Ambo.</i> Both, is declined as <i>Duo</i> .	

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti*, *ducenta*, *tricentia*; *ducentorum*, *ducentarum*, *ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille*, *Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive Plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plural declined, *Millia*, *milliam*, *millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hec Mille* and *haec Millia*, that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Genit. *Multitudo*, *Numerus*, *Manus*, *Pecunia*, *Pondus*, *Spatium*, *Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. These Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as *Dominus agitatus*, a just Lord; *Penna bona*, a good Pen; *Ingenium eximium*, an excellent Wit. Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as, *Puer probus*, a good Boy; *Lectio facilis*, an easy Lesson; *Potus apetinus*, an excellent Pot; *Fructus dulcis*, sweet Fruit; *Dies sautius*, happy Day, &c. And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.

## OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

1. Defective.	1. Substantives,	Wanting	1. Number,	Sing. as, <i>Liberi, Mina, Arma.</i> Plur. as, <i>Aer, Humus, Aerum.</i>
			2. Cases,	Nom. and Voc. { Sing. <i>Ditionis.</i> Gen. { <i>Chaos.</i> Dat. { Plur. <i>Ego.</i> Voc. { Sing. <i>Plus.</i>
or having only	2. Adjectives,	Wanting	1. Gender,	Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, <i>Mc.</i> Three; as, <i>Dica, dicam, dicas.</i>
			2. Number,	Two; as, <i>Suppetia, Suppetias.</i> One; as, <i>Dicis, Inficias, Noctu.</i>
or having the -	3. Cases, -	Wanting	Masc. as, <i>Cetera, ceterum.</i> Fem. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i> Neut. as, <i>Compos.</i>	
			Masc. and Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i> Masc. and Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i> Fem. and Neut. as, <i>Tros.</i>	
2. Variable.	2. Too much,	In Gender having Sing.	2. Number,	Plur. as, <i>Unusquisque.</i> Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i>
			3. Cases, -	Voc. as, <i>Nullus.</i> Dat. and Abl. as, <i>Tantundem.</i>
2. Redundant.	2. In Declension being of the	In Declension being of the	Masc. Masc. Fem. Neut. Neut. Neut.	Voc. only; as, <i>Mattle, Matti.</i>
				Neut. as, <i>Manalus, Manala.</i> Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Locus, -ci, and -ca.</i> Neut. as, <i>Carbasus, Carbasa.</i> Masc. as, <i>Calum, caeli.</i> Fem. as, <i>Epulum, epule.</i> Masc. & Neut. as, <i>Frenum, -ni &amp; -na.</i>
In Termination	2. Too little, as, <i>Inde-</i> climables, - - - - -	-	2. and 1. as, <i>Delicium, delicie.</i>	2. and 1. as, <i>Delicium, delicie.</i>
			2. and 4. as, <i>Laurus, -ri, and -rus.</i>	2. and 4. as, <i>Laurus, -ri, and -rus.</i>
In Gender	3. and 2. as, <i>Vas, -fis; -fa, -forum.</i>	-	3. and 2. as, <i>Vas, -fis; -fa, -forum.</i>	3. and 2. as, <i>Vas, -fis; -fa, -forum.</i>
			altogether; as, <i>Fas.</i>	altogether; as, <i>Fas.</i>
In Declension	-	-	in the Sing. as, <i>Cornu.</i>	in the Sing. as, <i>Cornu.</i>
			only; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i>	only; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i>
In Declension	-	-	and Gender; as, <i>Tignum, tignum.</i>	and Gender; as, <i>Tignum, tignum.</i>
			and Decl. as, <i>Materia, matries.</i>	and Decl. as, <i>Materia, matries.</i>
In Declension	-	-	Gend. and Decl. as, <i>Aethra, aethra.</i>	Gend. and Decl. as, <i>Aethra, aethra.</i>
			only; as, <i>bis &amp; hoc Vulgas.</i>	only; as, <i>bis &amp; hoc Vulgas.</i>
In Declension	-	-	only; as, <i>Fame, famis, of the 3d.</i>	only; as, <i>Fame, famis, of the 3d.</i>
			Abl. fame, of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always ic with the Poets.	Abl. fame, of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always ic with the Poets.

## Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective Nouns* are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under *Defective*, and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*. E. *eli, Cælorum*, comes not from *Cælum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa, Væm*, not from *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasī*: But Custom, which gives Laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retain'd the Plural; and so of others.

### De Comparatione.

M. Q U O T sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus, Comparativus & Superlativus.*

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi Gradus?

D. *Positivus est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum; Comparativus est semper Tertiæ; Superlativus semper Primæ & Secundæ.*

M. Unde formatur Comparativus Gradus?

D. A proximo casu Positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino & feminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; *ut*,

*Doctus*, learned, Gen. *docti*, *doctior*, & *doctius*, more ed; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti*, *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Positivus desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*; *ut*,

*Pulcher*, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pauperissimus*, most poor.

2. Si Positivus non desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo

### Of Comparison.

M. H OW many Degrees of Comparison are there?

S. Three; the Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the First and Second.

M. Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of Positive in *i*, by adding the Masculine and Feminine Syllable *or*, and *us* for Neuter; *as*,

*Doctus*, learned, Gen. *docti*, *doctior*, & *doctius*, more ed; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti*, *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek

M. Whence is the Superlative formed?

S. 1. If the Positive desinat in *er*, the Superlative is by adding *rimus*; *as*,

*Pulcher*, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor,

2. If the Positive in *er*, the Superlative is formed from the next C

Gen. *Dotti*, *dottissimus*, most learned : Dat. *Miti*, *mitissimus*, oft meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns, which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, heightening or lessening of its Signification. Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely ; as, *Durus*, hard ; *Parvus*, little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality ; as, *Durior*, harder, *Minor*, less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high or very low degree ; as, *Durissimus*, hardest, or most hard ; *Minimus*, very little, or least. The Positive hath various Terminations ; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us* ; the Superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[† *The positive, properly speaking, is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together : However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon and formed from it.*]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *eſt* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *eſt* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more*, and the Superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis*, and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime*, put before the Positive, and these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it ; as *Pius*, godly ; *Arduus*, high ; *Idoneus*, fit ; tho' not always.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. *Bonus*, *melior*, *optimus* : *Good*, better, best.

*Malus*, *pejor*, *pesimius* : *Evil*, worse, worst.

*Magnus*, *major*, *maximus* : *Great*, greater, greatest.

*Parvus*, *minor*, *minimus* : *Little*, less, least.

*Multus*, *plurimus* ; *multa*, *plurima* ; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum* : *much*, more, most.

2. *Facilis*, *easy* ; *Humilis*, *low* ; *Similis*, *like* ; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus* ; thus, *fucillimus*, *humillimus*, *simillimus*.

3. *Exter*, outward ; *Citer*, hither ; *Superus*, above ; *Inferus*, below ; *Posterior*, behind, have regular Comparatives ; but their Superlatives are, *extimus* (or *extimus*,) uttermost ; *citimus*, hithermost ; *supremus* (or *summus*,) uppermost, highest, last ; *infimus* (or *imius*,) lowest ; *postremus* (or *postimus*) latest, or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicus*, *Loquus*, *Ficus*, and *Volus*, have *entior* and *entinus* ; as *Maledicus*, one that railleth ; *Magniloquus*, one that boasteth ; *beneficus*, Beneficent ; *Malevolus*, Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Particles or Nouns in *ens*. Besides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio*, are very rare. Terence has *Mirificissimus*, and Plautus has *Mendaciloquius*.

5. *Propior*, nearer, *Proximus*, nearest or next ; *Quicquid*, *Swifter*,

## 22 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*mus*, swiftest; their Positives being out of use, or quite wanting. *Mus* has also another Comparative formed from it, *viz.* *Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one, or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Almus*, gracious, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacremus*, most holy; without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ These three Degrees of Comparison being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by itself, or jointly together; Respect still being had to their Declensions. But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.

### C A P. II. De Pronomine.

M. Q UOT sunt Pronomi-  
na + simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Iste*, *Hic*, *Is*, *Quis*, *Qui*; *Meus*, *Tuus*, *Suus*, *Noster*, *Vester*; *Nostras*, *Vestrás*, & *Cujas*.

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, *Ego*, *Tu*, *Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

Ego, I.

Sing. { Nom. ego, I, Gen. mei, of me, Dat. mihi, to me, Acc. me, me, Voc. — Abl. me, with me:
---

{  
Plur.

Nom. nos, we, Gen. nostrum vel nostri, of us, Dat. nobis, to us, Acc. nos, us, Voc. — Abl. nobis, with us.
---

Tu, Thou,

Sing. { N.tu, thou, G.tui, of thee, D.tibi, to thee, A.te, thee, V.tu, O thou, A.te, with thee:
---

{  
Plur.

N.vos, ye, [you] G.vestrum vel vestrí of you, D.vobis, to you, A.vos, you, V.vos, O ye, [you], A.vobis, with you.
--

Sui

¶ See Chap. IX.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

sui, of himself, &c.	N.	G. sui, of themselves,
sibi, to himself,	D.	D. sibi, to themselves,
se, himself,	A.	A. se, themselves,
se, with himself:	V.	A. se, with themselves.

ONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech as Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as instead of me, I lay, Tu, Thou or You; instead of Jacobus fecit, James did, Ille fecit, He did it, viz. James.

1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi.*
2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrum* and *Nostrarum;* *frorum* and *vestrarum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plauterence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum.*
3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, atives and Superlatives, and *Nostris* and *Vestris* after other Nouns, &c; tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum*, even in Cicero himself, as *Vossius* shewa.

Ille, illa, illud, *He, she, that, or it.*

ille, illa, illud,	N.	illi, illæ, illa,
illius, illius, illius,	G.	illorum, illarum, illorum,
illi, illi, illi,	D.	illis, illis, illis,
illum, illam, illud,	A.	illos, illas, illa,
ille, illa, illud,	V.	illi, illæ, illa,
illo, illa, illo :	A.	illis, illis, illis.
ipfa, ipsum, he himself, she herself, itself; and iste, ista, &c, she, that, are declined as ille, save only that ipsum in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.		

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This.*

hic, hæc, hoc,	N.	hi, hæ, hæc,
hujus, hujus, hujus,	G.	horum, harum, horum,
huic, huic, huic,	D.	his, his, his,
hunc, hanc, hoc,	A.	hos, has; hæc,
hic, hæc, hoc,	V.	hi, hæ, hæc,
hoc, hac, hoc :	A.	his, his, his.

Is, ea, id, *He, she, it or that.*

is, ea, id,	N.	ii, eæ, ea,
eius, ejus, ejus,	G.	corum, earum, corum,
ei, ei, ei,	D.	iis, vel eis,
eum, eam, id,	A.	eos, eas, ea,
eo, ea, eo :	V.	üs, vel eis.

*Quis, quæ, quod vel quid, Who, which, what?*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*N.* quis, quæ, quod vel quid, *N.* qui, quæ, qt

*G.* cuius, cuius, cuius, *G.* quorum, quarum, qt

*D.* cui, cui, cui, *D.* queis vel quibus,

*A.* quem, quam, quod vel quid, *A.* quos, quas, qt

*V.* — — — *V.* — — —

*A.* quo, qua, quo : *A.* queis vel quibus.

*Qui, quæ, quod, Who, which, that.*

*Sing.*

*Plur.*

*N.* qui, quæ, quod, *N.* qui, quæ, qu

*G.* cuius, cuius, cuius, *G.* quorum, quarum, qu

*D.* cui, cui, cui, *D.* queis vel quibus,

*A.* quem, quam, quod, *A.* quos, quas, qu

*V.* — — — *V.* — — —

*A.* quo, qua, quo : *A.* queis vel quibus.

*Meus, my, or mine; Tuus, thy, or thine; Suus, his own, its own, their own, are declined like Bonus, -a And Noster, our, or otrs; Vester, your, or yours, like P -chra, -chrum, of the First and Second Declension. But Suus, and Vester want the Vocative; Noster and Meus in which this last hath mi, (and sometimes meus) in the Sing.*

*Nostras, of our Country; Vestrás, of your Country; of what or which Country, are declined like Felix, Third Declension, Gen. Nostratis, Dat. Nostrati, &c.*

*NOTE, 1.* That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot en, or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence Rule many Nouns, as, Nullus, Nemo, Qualis, Quantus, Qu and several Pronouns, as, Ego, Sui, Quis, &c. want the Vocative; so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught which Reason we have given Vocatives to Ille, Ipse, Hic and Idem in following the Judgment of the great Vossius, Messieurs de Port R Johnson, which they support by the following Authorities:

*Esto nunc, Soh, testis, & bac mibi terra precanti.* Virg. *Æn*  
*Tu mibi libertas illa paterna veni.* Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.

*O nox illa, que pene eternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti.* Cic. pr  
*Ipse meas aether accipe summe preces.* Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of Idem seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid :

*— — — quique fuiti*

*Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.*

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *Tu, Meus, Noster, Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

*NOTE, 2.* That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*; as, Cic.  
fuis labor? Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

## Part II. Chap. II. of PRONOUNS. 25

**N**OTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quod-*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Id* with its Compounds, *Aliqid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have Substantive express, or govern one in the Genitive; Whence it is that *Id* last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *id* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise it shall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

**N**OTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and at (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. John Evelyns by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

**N**OTE, 5. That *Nostras*, *Vestras* and *Cujas* are declined like Gentile or ratione Nouns in as of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are named; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Priernas*, a Man, Woman or Thing, of or belonging to the Town of *Arpinum*, *Fidena*, or *Priernum*, and may have Neut. as well as these: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*; and *Liv. Belluni* *Priernas*; so *Colum.* has *Arbusum nostras*, and *Cic. Nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[I pass over taking notice, that in old Authors, especially *Plautus*, we find *tis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the Femin. Gender; *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *ti*; *hisce* for *hi*; *ibus*, *tibus*; *for his*, *lis*; *illæ*, *ipsæ*, *istæ*, *quæ* in the Gen. Dat. Sing. Fem. em. for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quoius*, *quo*, for *cujus*, *ti*; because they are extraordinary.]

### OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last art of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined,

*Nom.* *Gen.* *Dat.*

*Quisnam*, *quænam*, *quodnam vel quidnam*; *cuiusnati*, *cuinam*, *Quispiam*, *quæpiam*, *quodpiam vel quidpiam*; *cuiuspiam*, *cuipiam*, *Quisquam*, *quæquam*, *quodquam vel quidquam*; *cuiusquam*, *cuiquam*, *Quisque*, *quæque*, *quodque vel quidque*; *cuiusque*, *cuique*, *Quisquis*, *quæquid vel quicquid*; *cuiuscenjus*, *cuiaci*, and so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis*. But *quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominat. id Accus. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quicquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*; some; *Equis*, who? To which some add *Aequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

*Nom.* *Gen.* *Dat.*

*Aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid vel aliquid*, *alicujus*, *alicui*, *Equis*, *ecqua vel ecquæ*, *ecquod vel ecquid*, *eccujuſ*, *ec cui*, *Si quis*, *si qua*, *si quod*, *vel si quid*, *si cijus*, *si cui*, *Ne quis*, *ne qua*, *ne quod vel ne quid*, *ne cijus*, *ne cui*, *Vnum quis*, *num qua*, *num quod vel num quid*, *nuncijus*, *num cijus*, Note, That these, and only these, have *qua* in the *Nom. Sing.* *Nom.* and *Accus. Plur.* *Neut.*

26 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, <sup>1.</sup> *Qui*  
*Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined. <sup>a</sup> *Qui*

<i>Rom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Deut.</i>
Quicunque, quæcumque, quodcumque;	cujuſcumque, cuicung	out
Quidam, quædam, quoddam <i>vel</i> quiddam;	cujuſdam, euidam	it is
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet <i>vel</i> quidlibet;	cujuſlibet, euilibet	? 2
Quivis, quævis, quodvis <i>vel</i> quidvis;	cujuſvis, cuivis.	The

Some of these are twice compounded; as *Equisnam*, Who? *Uuisque*, Every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its Nom. and second wants the Plur.

NOTE, i. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quis*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. : id. Voss. p. 331.

NOTE, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *quies*, *in quibus* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

**NOTE, 3.** That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam* in the Accul. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Genit. Plur. *n* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Reason in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among compound Pronouns *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui*, with *Ips*e, but in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ips*e and *se ips*e where the two Words are of different Cases.

III. It is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *Idem*, the same, which is thus declined.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Idem, eadem, idem,	<i>Nom.</i> iidem, eædem, eadem;
<i>Gen.</i> ejusdem, ejusdem, ejusdem,	<i>Gen.</i> corundem, earundem, eorundem;
<i>Dat.</i> eidem, eidem, eidem,	<i>Dat.</i> eisdem vel iisdem,
<i>Acc.</i> eundem, eandem, idem,	<i>Acc.</i> eisdem, eadém, eadem,
<i>Voc.</i> idem, eadem, idem,	<i>Voc.</i> iidem, eædem, eadem,
<i>Abl.</i> eodem, eadem, eodem:	<i>Abl.</i> eisdem vel iisdem.

IV. Most of the other compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *ifte* and *bic* is compounded, Nom. *Isthic*, *isthac*, *isthoc* vel *isthu-*  
Acc. *Isthinc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc* vel *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and  
Acc. Plur. Neut. *isthac*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum, eccam*; Plur. *eccos, eccas*: And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum, ellam*; *ellos, ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *bis*, *ist*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *Ejusmodi*, *bujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *ce* put in the Middle, *cujuscemodi*, *bujuscemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quiccum*, or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these syllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *se*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed, and emphatical, as, *Egomet*, *tute*, *bujuste*, *meapte*, *biccine*.

## **REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.**

*i. In the Nominative, or Foregoing State (as the English Grammarians call it) we use, I, Thou, He, She, We, Ye, They, and Who: But in the o-*

## Part II. Chap. III. of *Verb.* 27

2. When we speak of a Person, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask Question or not; as, *Who did it?* *The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a Thing with a Question, we use *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design*, i. e. *The Thing which*, or *that which* you design. As on the contrary, when it refers to some particular Thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a Question; as, *Give me the Book. Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. This makes in the Plural *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who*, *Whom*, or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you*, *The Man that we saw*, *The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Our*, *Your*, *Their*, when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Owne*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book*, *This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own*.

5. We often use *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with these Particles, *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, instead of *This*, *That*, *Which*, and *What*, with these same Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Herewith*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herein*, *Herewith*; for *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom*, *Of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *Tis* or *it is*, as some do.

### C A P. III.

#### *De Verbo.*

M. **Q**uomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, & Personas.

M. Quot sunt Voces?

D. Due; *Activa* & *Pasiva*.

M. Quot sunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus*, *Subjunctivus*, *Imperativus* & *Infinitivus*.

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

### C H A P. III.

#### *Of Verb.*

M. **H**OW is a Verb declined?

S. By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

M. How many Voices are there?

S. Two; the Active and Passive.

M. How many Moods are there?

S. Four; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative and Infinitive.

M. How many Numbers are there?

## 28 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue

D. Duo; Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Quot sunt tempora?

D. Quinque; Præsens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-plusquamperfectum & Future.

M. Quot sunt personæ?

D. Tres; Prima, Secunda, Tertia.

S. Two; Singularis.

M. How many there?

S. Five; the Preter-imperfect, the perfect, the Preter- and the Future.

M. How many Personæ?

S. Three; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is a Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to have. A Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said.

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech in these ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of Speech, without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with five Nouns makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever HE or IT SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb, otherwise.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it; the latter what is suffered by the Nominative or Person before it; as, *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into Finite and Infinite. The first, viz. the INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE and IMPERATIVE, are called FINITE, because they have certain fixed Terminations answering to certain Persons, singular and plural. The last is called INFINITE or ILLUSTRATIVE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than one.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively; *I love*; *Non amo*, I do not love; or else asks a Question; as *Dost thou love?* *Annon amas?* Dost thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after, as *metis præcepta mea servate*, If ye love me keep my Commandments.

[This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the Potential. 1. The PTATIVE, when a Word importing a Wish, as, Utinam, *Wo* *O si*, *Q if*, goes before it; 2. It is named SUBJUNCTIVE because it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives Indefinites. (See Chap. IX.) 3. It is called POTENTIAL, when the simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or it, such as a Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, &c. The Signs in our Language are May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should (for Would have or Should have; as, *they had repented*, for *they might have repented*). But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have put them all under one, viz. the Subjunctive, to which with few

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay a Volitive and Debitive which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti or utinam, which really signify no more but That. And 'tis very probable that in like Manner some Verbs, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as Ita est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, *Amare*, to love.

III. The TENSES are either Simple or Compound. The SIMPLE Tenses are the Present, the Preter-perfect and Future.

- 1. The PRESENT } Present.
- 2. The P<sup>R</sup>ETER-PERFECT } Tense speaks of Time now Past.
- 3. The FUTURE } To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the Preter-imperfect, and the Preter-pluperfet.

4. The P<sup>R</sup>ETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam*, I did love [viz. then.]

5. The P<sup>R</sup>ETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scripsoram epifolam*, I had written a Letter, [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *Cum cœnavero tu leges*, when I shall have supped, [i. e. after Supper] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is Shall have; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one Time; as, *Cum cœnabo tu leges*, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Ideas or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as, a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, And other Verb express or understood; And because these also generally connote

bey very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Cont  
Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally futa  
with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of t  
Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, Legi  
hou, with respect to its Execution, is future, but with respect to thi  
nand it is present. Again in Legam, I may or can read, the Action  
it all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; a  
others. Now, as it seems evident, that from these Modifications of t  
more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods hav  
been distinguished; so I am of Opinion that bad Grammarians taken thei  
ures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they ha  
For some of them, as Sanctius, &c. determining the Times of these N  
the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive  
the Future Time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or  
if no Time: Others, viz. Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepaeus, &c. i  
will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same Grounds make Utinam  
the Future of the Optative; Utinam legerem the Present of it. By t  
Rule they make a Future of the Potential in RIM; as, Citius credide  
should or shall sooner believe; and another of the Subjunctive in ISSE  
Juravit se illum statim interfecturum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset  
wore he would presently kill him, if he shoule not swear to him, Cic  
with all imaginable Diference to these great Men, I humbly think that these  
may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i.  
pecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Me  
tions, superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the  
Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) citius cre  
seems to import these two Things, 1st, That I have and continue to have  
son why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or pa  
And 2dly, That I shall sooner have believed it, than another. Thir  
respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples  
the Preterite in RIM both the same Signification with the Future-perfet  
as, Si te inde exemerim, Tescerent. for exemero. See Voss. lib. v. c  
and Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other Example, the Co  
of two Times is yet more evident; for though jusjurandum dedisset be p  
and consequently future with respect to Juravit, yet it is prior, not of  
Time of the Relation, but to interfectorum; to prevent which it behov  
cessarily to be past; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will  
hold in the Infinitive and Participles, which of themselves have alw  
fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in t  
in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for Instan  
bere is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and Scr  
always prior to the same Verb in all its Tenses; as Dicit, dixit, or dic  
vat, juvit or juvabit Me scribere and Me scripsisse. So also the Particij  
a fixt Time, present, past, or future; and when any Part of the Ver  
joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that  
peradded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of  
wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it f  
happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a gr  
Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Lat  
er Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my Judge  
binder, but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its et  
rains Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determ

1. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, answering to the same Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

2. There are three PERSONS in each Number; The FIRST speaks self, the SECOND is spoken to, and the THIRD is spoken of. First hath only EGO and NOS, the Second only TU and VOS, the Third any Substantive Noun singular and plural, put before the active Terminations of the Verb, answering to them through all its, Moods and Tenses.

[*Verb bath the same Respect to its Nominative that an Adjective bath to substantive; and therefore, as an Adjective bath not properly either Genders Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for these of its Substantive, so a bath properly neither Persons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations answering to the Persons and Numbers of its Nominative.]*

OTE, 1. That *Ego* and *Tu* are seldom express, because the Terminations of the Verb immediately discover them, without any Hazard Mistake.

OTE, 2. That if a Substantive Noun be joined with *Ego* or *Tu*, the *b* is of the Person of these Pronouns, not of the Noun.

OTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Discourse, the third Person is frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these Pronouns, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *quis*, and *qui*, do supply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Act. the Theme of the Verb, and *est*, *et*, or *s*; or for the greater Emphasis, *do*, *doſt*, *doſt*, or *does* before it.

*Pass.* *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, *be*, *beſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

Act. *ed*, *edſt*, &c. or for the greater Emphasis, *did*, *didſt*, before it.

*Pass.* *was*, *wafſt*, *were*, *wert*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

*Act.* *have*, *haſt*, *hath* or *has*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c. or as the Im.

*Pass.* *have been*, *haſt been*, *hath* or *has been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

*Act.* *had*, *hadſt*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

*Pass.* *had been*, *hadſt been*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.

*Act.* *shall*, *will*, *ſhall*, *wilt*, with the Verb.

*Pass.* *ſhall be*, *will be*, *ſhall be*, *will be*, with a Word in *ed*, *en*, &c.  
The Subjunctive Mood active has frequently these Signs.

*ent*, *may* or *can*.

*erf.* *might*, *could*, *would*, *ſhould*.

*ieſt.* *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have*, or *had*.

*ierſ.* *may have*, or *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *ſhould have*,

*ure*, *ſhall have*.

The Passive has frequently the same Signs with *be* or *been*.

e Conjugationibus. | Of Conjugations.

Q UOT sunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.

M. Quae sunt Notæ harum conjugationum?

M. How many Conjugations are there?

S. Four; First, Second, Third and Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of these Conjugations?

D. V.



Perfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-avi;	1 Am-avisti;	1 Am-avit;	1 Am-avimus;	2 Am-avistis;	3 Am-averunt vel -averere.
--------------	-----------	--------------	------------	--------------	---------------	----------------------------

The Perfect.

1	I have loved *,
2	Thou hast loved,
3	He hath loved:
1	We have loved,
2	Ye have loved,
3	They have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-averam;	2 Am-averas;	3 Am-averat :
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-avefamus;	2 Am-averatis,	3 Am-averant.

The Plu-perfect.

1	I had loved,
2	Thou hadst loved,
3	He had loved:
1	We had loved,
2	Ye had loved,
3	They had loved.

Futurum:

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-abo;	2 Am-abis;	3 Am-abit :
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-abimus;	2 Am-abitis,	3 Am-abuit.

The Future.

1	I shall or will love,
2	Thou shalt or wilt love,
3	He shall or will love :
1	We shall or will love,
2	Ye shall or will love,
3	They shall or will love.

SUBJUNCTIVUS. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-em,	1 I may or can love,
<i>Plur.</i>	2 Am-es,	2 Thou mayst or canst love,
	3 Am-et :	3 He may or can love :
	1 Am-emus,	1 We may or can love,
	2 Am-etis,	2 Ye may or can love,
	3 Am-ent.	3 They may or can love.

The Present.

Imperfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-arem;	1 I might, could, would or should
<i>Plur.</i>	2 Am-ares,	2 Thou mightst, couldst, wouldest, &c.
	3 Am-aret :	3 He might, could, would or should
	1 Am-aremus,	1 We might, could, would or should
	2 Am-aretis,	2 Ye might, could, would or should
	3 Am-arent.	3 They might, could, would or should

E

Per-

"Or, I loved or did love, Thou lovest or didst love, &c. as in the  
text,

# 36 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*P. M.* { 1 Am-abimur,  
2 Am-abimini,  
3 Am-abuntur.

1 We shall or will be  
2 Ye shall or will be  
3 They shall or will be

Plur. I  
Plur. II  
Plur. III

## SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

*Præsens.*

*Sing.* { 1 Am-er,  
2 Am-eras vel -ere,  
3 Am-etur :  
*Plur.* { 1 Am-emur,  
2 Am-emini,  
3 Am-entur.  
*Imperfectum.*

*Sing.* { 1 Am-arér,  
2 Am-areris vel -arete,  
3 Am-aretur :  
*Plur.* { 1 Am-aremur,  
2 Am-aremini,  
3 Am-arentur.  
*Perfectum.*

*Sing.* { 1 sim vel fuerim,  
Am-atus { 2 sis vel fueris,  
3 sit vel fuerit :  
*Plur.* { 1 sumus vel fuerimus,  
Am-ati { 2 sitis vel fueritis,  
3 sint vel fuerint.

*Plusquamperfectum.* { 1 essem vel fuisset,  
Am-atus { 2 esses vel fuisses,  
3 esset vel fuisset :  
Am-ati { 2 essetis v. fuissetis,  
3 essent vel fuissent.

*Futurum.* { 1 fuero,  
Ama-tus { 2 fueris,  
3 fuerit :  
Am-ati { 1 fuerimus,  
2 fueritis,  
3 fuerint.

1 I may or can be  
2 Thou mayst or canst be  
3 He may or can be  
1 We may or can be  
2 Ye may or can be  
3 They may or can be

The Present.

1 I might, could, would, &c.  
2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c.  
3 He might, could, &c.  
1 We might, could, &c.  
2 Ye might, could, &c.  
3 They might, could, &c.

The Imperfect.

1 I may have been  
2 Thou mayst have been  
3 He may have been  
1 We may have been  
2 Ye may have been  
3 They may have been

The Plu-perfect.

1 I might, could, &c. have or  
2 Thou mightst, &c. have or  
3 He might, &c. have or  
1 We might, &c. have or  
2 Ye might, &c. have or  
3 They might, &c. have or

The Future.

1 I shall have been  
2 Thou shalt have been  
3 He shall have been  
1 We shall have been  
2 Ye shall have been  
3 They shall have been

be loved.

had been loved.

loved.

## IMPERATIVUS Modus.

*Præsens.*

*Sing.* { 2 Am-are vel am-ator,  
3 Am-ator;

The IMPERATIVE Mood,  
The Present.

2 Be thou loved,  
3 Let him be loved ;

Plu

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb.

3.

**Dicitur** 2 Am-aminis,  
3 Am-antor.

2 Be ye loved,  
3 Let them be loved.

**I N F I N I T I V U S Modus.** The INFINITIVE Mood.

**Praef.** Am-ari.

To be loved.

**Perf.** Am-atum esse vel fuisse.

To have or had been loved.

**Fut.** Am-attum iri.

To be about to be loved.

**P A R T I C I P I A,**

The PARTICIPLES.

**P**erfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.

**F**uturi, Am-andus, -a -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

### Secunda Conjugatio.

#### V O X A C T I V A.

Deceo,	docui,	doctum,	docere.
--------	--------	---------	---------

#### I N D I G A T I V U S.

Sing.	Plur.
-------	-------

<b>Pr.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-eo, <sup>1</sup> -es, <sup>2</sup> -et;	<sup>3</sup> -emus, <sup>1</sup> -etis,	<sup>2</sup> -ent.
	<b>Im.</b> Doc-ebam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebamus, -ebatis,	-ebant.

<b>Per.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-ui, -uisti, -uit;	<b>D</b> oc-uimus, -uistis,	<sup>1</sup> -uerunt,
			<sup>2</sup> -uere.

<b>Plu.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-ueram, -ueras, -uerat;	<b>D</b> oc-ueramus, -ueratis,	<b>D</b> oc-uerant.
-------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

<b>Fut.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-ubo, -ebis, -ebit;	<b>D</b> oc-ubimus, -ebitis,	<b>D</b> oc-ubunt.
-------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------

#### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

<b>Pr.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-eam, -eas, -eat;	<b>D</b> oc-eamus, -eatis,	<b>D</b> oc-eant.
------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------

<b>Im.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-erem, -eres, -eret;	<b>D</b> oc-eremus, -eretis,	<b>D</b> oc-erent.
------------	---------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------

<b>Per.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-uerim, -ueris, -uerit;	<b>D</b> oc-uerimus, -ueritis,	<b>D</b> oc-uerint.
-------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

<b>Plu.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-uissim, -uisses, -uisset;	<b>D</b> oc-uissimus, -uissetis,	<b>D</b> oc-uissent.
-------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------

<b>Fut.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-uerio, -ueris, -uerit;	<b>D</b> oc-uerimus, -ueritis,	<b>D</b> oc-uerint.
-------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------	---------------------

#### I M P E R A T I V U S.

<b>Praef.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-	<sup>1</sup> -e,	<sup>2</sup> -eto;	<sup>3</sup> -ete,
		-eto,		-etote,

<sup>1</sup> -ete,	<sup>2</sup> -etote,	<sup>3</sup> -ento.
--------------------	----------------------	---------------------

#### I N F I N I T I V U S. S U P I N A. P A R T I C I P I A. G E R U N D I A.

<b>Præf.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-ere.	<b>I</b> Doc-tum.	<b>Pr.</b> Doc-ens.	<b>D</b> oc-endum,
--------------	------------------	-------------------	---------------------	--------------------

<b>Perf.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-uisse.	<b>2</b> Doc-tu.	<b>Fu.</b> Doc-turus.	<b>D</b> oc-endi,
--------------	--------------------	------------------	-----------------------	-------------------

<b>Fut.</b>	<b>D</b> oc-furum,			<b>D</b> oc-eando.
-------------	--------------------	--	--	--------------------

<i>esse vel fuisse.</i>			
-------------------------	--	--	--

v o

## 38 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

### V O X P A S S I V A.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

*I N D I C A T I V U S.*

Sing. Plur.

*P r.* Doc-eor, {-eris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.  
{-ere,

*Im.* Doc-ebar, {-caris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
{-bare,

*Fut.* Doc-ebor, {-beris, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.  
{-ebere,

### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*P r.* Doc-ear, {-caris, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
{-care,

*Im.* Doc-erer, {-eroris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
{-erere,

### I M P E R A T I V U S.

*P r a f.* Doc- {-ere, -etor; -emini, -entor.

### I N F I N I T I V U S.

*P r a f.* Doc-eri.

*Perf.* Doc-tum esse vel fuisse.

*Fut.* Doc-tum iri.

### P A R T I C I P I A.

*P e r.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.

*Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, -um.

## Tertia Conjugatio.

### V O X A C T I V A.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

### I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing. Plur.

*P r a f.* L<sup>1</sup> Eg-e, <sup>2</sup>-is, <sup>3</sup>-it; <sup>1</sup>-imus, <sup>2</sup>-itis, <sup>3</sup>-unt.

*Imp.* Leg-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

*Perf.* Leg-i, -isti, -it; -imus, -istis, -erunt, -ere.

*Plus.* Leg-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

*Fut.* Leg-am, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*P r a f.* Leg-am, -as, -at; -amus, -atis, -ant.

*Imp.* Leg-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretus, -erent.

## Part II. Chap. III. of *Actu.*

3,

{ 2 Am-amini,  
3 Am-antor.

2 Be ye loved,  
3 Let them be loved.

*N F I N I T I V U S* Modus. The INFINITIVE Mood.

asf. Am-ari.

To be loved.

arf. Am-atum esse vel fuisse.

To have or had been loved.

st. Am-atum iri.

To be about to be loved.

### P A R T I C I P I A.

The PARTICIPLES.

perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a -um. Of the Perfect, Loved.  
sturi, Am-andus, -a -um. Of the Fut. To be loved.

## Secunda Conjugatio.

### V O X A C T I V A.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

### I N D I G A T I V U S.

Sing. Plur.

D<sup>1</sup> 2 3 I 2 3  
oc-eo, -es, -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.  
Doc-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

er. Doc-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, {-uerunt,  
-uere.

lu. Doc-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
it. Doc-eko, -ebis, -ebit; -ebimus, -ebitis, -ebunt,

### S U B J U N C T I V U S.

r. Doc-eam, -eas, -eat; -eamus, -eatis, -eant.  
r. Doc-erem, -eres, -eret; -eremus, -eretis, -erent.  
er. Doc-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint,  
lu. Doc-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent,  
it. Doc-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint,

### I M P E R A T I V U S.

rasf. Doc- { -e,  
-eto; { -ete,  
-etote, -ento.

### V F I N I T I V U S. S U P I N A. P A R T I C I P I A. G E R U N D I A.

rasf. Doc-ere. | 1 Doc-tum. | Pr. Doc-ens. | Doc-endum,

arf. Doc-uisse. | 2 Doc-tu. | Fu. Doc-turus. | Doc-endi,

st. Doc-turum | elle vel fuisse. | | Doc-endo.

—40 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Quarta Conjugatio.

V O X A C T I V A.

*Audio*, audivi, auditum, audire.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Pluri.

*Pr.* **A**ud-iō, <sup>1</sup>-is, <sup>2</sup>-it; <sup>3</sup>-imus, <sup>1</sup>-itis, <sup>2</sup>-itūs, <sup>3</sup>-iunt.

*Im.* Aud-iebam, -iebas, -iebat; -iebamus, -iebatis, -iebant.

*Per.* Aud-ivi, -ivisti, -ivit; -ivimus, -ivistis, <sup>1</sup>-iverunt, <sup>2</sup>-ivre.

*Pl.* Aud-iveram, -iveras, -verat; -iveramus, -iveratis, -verant.

*Fu.* Aud-iam, ies, -iet; -iectus, -iectis, -ient.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Pr.* Aud-iam, -ias, -iat; -iatius, -iatis, -iant.

*Im.* Aud-irem, -ires, -iret; -iremus, -iretis, -ireat.

*Per.* Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

*Pl.* Aud-ivissem, -ivisses, -ivisset; -ivissemus, -ivissetis, -ivissent.

*Fu.* Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverim.

I M P E R A T I V U S.

*Pr.* Aud- <sup>{</sup>-i, <sup>{</sup>-ito, -ite, <sup>{</sup>-itotē, -iunto.

*INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.*

*Pr.* Aud-ire. *1.* Aud-itum. *Pr.* Aud-iens. *Aud-iendum,*

*Per.* Aud-ivisse. *2.* Aud-itū. *Fu.* Aud-iturus. *Aud-iendi,*

*Fu.* Aud-iturūm *Aud-iendo.*

*et le vel fuisse.*

V O X P A S S I V A.

*Audior*, auditus, audiri.

I N D I C A T I V U S.

Sing.

Pluri.

*Pr.* Aud-iōr, <sup>{</sup>-iris, -itur; -imur, -imini, -iuntur;

*Im.* Aud-iebar, <sup>{</sup>-iebaris, -iebatur; -iebamur, -iebamini, -iebantur.

*Fu.* Aud-iar, <sup>{</sup>-ieris, -ietur; -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

*Pr.* Aud-iar, <sup>{</sup>-iaris, -iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.

*Ex.* Aud-irer, <sup>{</sup>-ireris, -iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.

I

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 41

### IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Aud. { -ire, -itor; -imini, -iunctor.

### INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIA.

Præf. Aud-iri. | Per. Aud-itus, -a, -um.

Perf. Aud-itum esse vel fuisse. | Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Aud-itum iri.

¶ Note, That in the Examples of the Second, Third and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such Parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle-perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. the Perfect and Plu-perfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Plu-perfect and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the Change of the Participle only excepted: But it is carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number and Case with its Substantive, or (which is the same thing) with the Person before it.

### 1. REMARKS shewing when a LATIN Verb is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is signified, the English Verb may be varied in all its Tenses by the Participle in ING, with the Verb Am; as,

Pref.	I am reading,	for	I read.
Imp.	I was reading,		I did read,
Perf.	I have been reading,		I have read.
Plup.	I had been reading,		I had read.
Fut.	I shall be reading,		I shall read.

So likewise in the Passive Voice, *The House is building*, Domus ædificatur. *The Lesson was prescribing*, Lessio præscribatur. Sometimes a is set before the Participle; as, *While the House is a building*, It is a doing, he is a dying.

2. When a Question is asked, the Nominative Case or Person is set after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, *Love I?* Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?

3. We have made THOU the second Person singular to distinguish it from the Plural. But it is customary with us, (as also with the French and others) tho' we speak but to one particular Person, to use the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty GOD, or otherwise when we signify Familiarity, Disdain Contempt,

4. The Perfect of the Indicative is often englished as the Imperfect *Anguam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or, did love] this

See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1.* from v. 21

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently englighed by HAD after quam, Postquam, Ubi or Ut for Postquam; as, *Postquam superavimus IJ* After we had [were] past over the Isthmus, *Ovid. Hac ubi dict* When he had spoken these Words, *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim profectus est,* After he had saluted me, &c. Cic.

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most strong Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very oft the same with the *Indicative*, save only that it hath some *Conjunction* (finite Word before it; such as, *If Seeing, Left, That, Although, I was, Si amem, If I love; Ne amem, Left I love; Causa est cur amer* the Cause why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *ames, I intreat that you may love, Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, a like, is sometimes englighed as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligaris, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the Present of the Subjunctive is freely englighed by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an silentiam? speak or be silent? Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I men very Thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod;* as, *Non est (causa) quod eas,* There is no Reason why you should go, or you ne go. Sometimes it is englighed by WOULD; as, *In facinus juridice pute* would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have englighed the PERFECT of the Subjunctive in RIM by HAVE, (as, *Ne frustra bi tales viri venerint,* That such Men as thei not have come in vain, *Cic.* *Forsitan audieris,* You may perhaps have it:) to distinguish it from the Present and Pluperfet, by the Si which it is also most frequently englighed; as, *Ut sic dixerim,* That so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Untantia strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter: *Fortasse errarim,* Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores* derim peritissimi, The ablest Orators I have seen [or could see]

10. This Perfect in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a Signification, and then it is englighed by SHOULD, WOULD, OR CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim,* I should sooner believe *Lii enter audierim,* I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque eorum* cile opposuerim, I could easily match Cicero with any of them, *I Non facile dixerim,* I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios* yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te figerit, rierim,* If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* but all Ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Exec yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their i ty shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the Future i

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like sometimes be englighed by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim,* as if I had been sent, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint,* As if they had already overcon

12. The PLU-PERFECT in ISSEM is sometimes englighed by SH<sup>t</sup> is, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcumque imperavisset, se esse facturus,* He command what he pleased, whatever he commanded, [should and] they would do, *Ces. Fodens istum est his legibus, ut cuius pot vitamine viciissent, is alteri imperaret,* An Agreement was made

Terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past Time referred to; and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly said directly is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcumque optaris,* Doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee, *Ovid.* *Sol Phaethonti futurum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset,* The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, that what was the Future of the Subjunctive in the direct Speech, becomes the Pluperfect in the indirect Recital of it. See Turner's Exercises, p. 21, &c. But, as we have said, p. 30. the *Plu-perfet*, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a Future, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now past at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination in *issem* a Future Tense, as Mr. Turner does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted as, *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum conservit,* He who shall cut off *Antony*, shall put an End to the War, *Cic.* *Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc,* I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter.* *Si negaverit,* If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis,* Somebody will perhaps say, *Cic.* *Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero,* I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the Future in RO in our Language, and though (which is more material) very frequently it and the Future of the Indicative are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, p. 339. But still think with the great *Vossius*, that the Future in RO is always a Future perfect, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a Thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a Future of the Indicative is joined with it, which in Order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mibi feceris, si disputabis,* You shall have done, [shall do] me a great Favour, if you shall dispute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Sandius* with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them:) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help*, and *Make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftner understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently englished, according as the preceding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme.

<i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that]. I write.
<i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
<i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.

## 44 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

- Dicit me scripsiſſe, He says [that I wrote, or did write.  
Dixit me scripsiſſe, He said [that] I had written.  
Dicet me scripsiſſe, He shall say [that] I have written, or did w  
Dicit me scripturum [eſſe,] He says [that] I will write.  
Dixit me scripturum [eſſe,] He said [that] I would write.  
Dicet me scripturum [eſſe,] He shall say [that] I will write.  
Dicit me scripturum fuiſſe, He says [that] I would have written.  
Dixit me scripturum fuiſſe, He said [that] I would have written.  
Dicet me scripturum fuiſſe, He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive in this Manner, both in English and Latin, especially after he has been taught something of Construction: And then to cause him vary the Accusative into *Te, se, illum, hominem, fæminam, &c.* and these again into the General, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, fæminas, &c.* But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceding Verb is of the Present or Future Tense, the Future of the Infinitive, with *eſſe*, is rendered by SHALL or WILL and when it is of the Perfect Tense, the Future of the Infinitive is rendered WOULD, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by SHOULD; *Dixi te sciturum eſſe*, I said that you should know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceding Verb is of the Imperfect or Perfect Tenses, the English of the Infinitive is the same as when it is the Perfect.

16. The Perfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive Passive, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are englighed by AM, ART, IS, ARE, instead of HAVE BEEN, when the Thing is signified to be just now past; as, *vulnerum sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*, The Work is finished; *Cum tempore mutata sint*, since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently englighed by WAS, WERE, WERT, as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; AS is so what is called the Pluperfect with *eram* and *essem*; as, *Labor fuit erat*, The Labour was finished; *Si labor finitus ejet*, If the Labour were finished.

### II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1 A Great Part of the Passive Voice, and some of the Active, is made up of two of its own Participles and the Auxiliary Verb & of which you have the full Conjugation, p. 52.) after this Manner:



2. Having p. 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every P

**the Passive Voice.** To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the Tenses, viz. into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it; and such as import that the Thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the Present, Imperfect, and Future-imperfect; of the second sort are the Perfect, Pluperfekt, and Future-perfect, See Page 29. From this Division of the Tenses, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the Passive. Thus for Instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the building of an House. 1. When I say, *Domus edificatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When, *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a-building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some Time hence it shall be a building, thout any formal Regard to the Finishing of it. But when I make use of the Participle-perfect, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with these Subdistinctions. 1. *Ædificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finished, and some Time since has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain Time past referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to a particular Time when, or with respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same Thing to our Purpose whether the Thing is or was done, or a-doing; or whether it was done just now, or some Time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it; and the Matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at Liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were Eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before, whence it is that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past Tenses. And 4. The Present Tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is very near, or (according to Perizonius) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity weare confined to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses, in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, an perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard.

## 46 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

I shall only add for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently; that when we signify a Thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *sum*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the *Passive* that are supplied by *Sum*, or if they should be referred to Construction, (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles, and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Significations are not precisely the same; as,

<i>Amo,</i>	<i>amabam,</i>	<i>amavi,</i>	<i>amaveram,</i>	<i>amabo,</i>
<i>Sum amans,</i>	<i>eram amans,</i>	<i>fui amans,</i>	<i>ero amans,</i>	<i>or sum amatus.</i>
<i>Amor,</i>	<i>amabar,</i>	<i>amabor,</i>	<i>amer,</i>	<i>amarer.</i>
<i>Sum amatus,</i>	<i>eram amatus,</i>	<i>ero amatus,</i>	<i>aniatus sim,</i>	<i>amatus essent.</i>

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently used instead of the Future of the *Indicative*, especially if Purpose or Intention is signified; as, *Profecturus sim*, or *Proficiscor*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *Sim* and *esse* instead of the Future imperfect, or Plu-perfect of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin sit fakturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset fakturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *qui fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the Future of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the Fut. of the *Subjunctive* than that of the *Indicative*, as, *Ovid. Qui cum vult erit*, is much the same as *Vultus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, &c. *vola*, *Brutus* and *Manilius* understood the Words of the *Attianian Law*, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei eterna auctoritas esto*. But that a *Preterite* Time is there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the *Preterite-Participle* with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius*, lib XVII. cap. 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the second Person Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common Rudiments do) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus. Epid. 5. 2. Facto opere arbitraminor.* And *Pseud. 2. 2. Pariter pre gredimino.*

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination ASSO in the Future *Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation; as *Excantatio* is the Law of the 12 Tables, *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Cenassio*, *Irritasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added ESSO of the second Conjugation; as, *Liceffit*, *Idem*; *prohibeffit*, *Cic. for Licuerit*, *probuerit*; To these some add, *Jusso* for *jussere*; that of *Virg. Aen. II. v. 467.*

*Cetera, qua jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.*

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *so* change *r* into *s*; as, *Levaro*, *li vasso*; but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second Person of the Present of the Indic. by adding *so*; as, *levas*, *levasso*; *probies*, *p'asso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubasso*, not

9. Upon the same Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in **ASSERE** formed from **ASSO**; as, *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnaffere*, in *I-lautus*, for *impetraturum esse*, &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse*, &c. in the Nominative, as, *Dicitur amaturus esse*, yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amatum* and *amatum*, as most common, preserving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Page 77.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and IRE the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum*.

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire. Doctum ire*, are rather of the Present than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import *Futurity*, as *Necessity, Duty or Merit*. For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum iri*, and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, *That a Letter will be written by him, or That he will write a Letter*; and the second, *That a Letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a Letter*. For tho' *Santius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* ha ve clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative* Mood wants the first Person both Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must justle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus* speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle, destinatus obdura. But you Catullus, continue obstinate.*

15. The Present of the *Subjunctive* is most frequently used instead of the *Imperative*, especially in forbidding, after, *Ne, nemo, nullus, &c.* as, *Valeas, Farewell, for vale. Ne facias, Do it not, rather than Ne fac*. And sometimes the Future of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Tu videris, See you to it. Ne dixeris, Don't say it*. And sometimes also the Future of the *Indicative*; as *Non occides, Thou shalt not kill, for Ne occide, or occidito. Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis*, Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide. Referes ergo hac & nuncius ibis Pelide genitori, Virg. i. e. refer & ito*. But it is to be remarked that none of these are proper *Imperatives*; for to the first is understood, *oro, rogo, peto*, or the like with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *we* express; and the third is only a Command by Consequence, because of the Authority, Influence, or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfingring with one another, we have excluded these from the *Imperative*: Tho' the common *Rudiments* take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However it is observable that we shew most Civility and Respect when we use the *Subjunctive*, and most Authority by the Future of the *Indicative*, and NTO of the *Imperative*; which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Person *Passive* is more usual than RE; and TRUNT of the Perfect of the *Indicative Active* than ERE; especially in Prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

## III. REMARKS upon ENGLISH Verbs.

1. A N English Verb hath only two Tenses, distinguished by different Terminations, and both in the *Active Voice*, viz. the *Present* and *Preterite*. The *Present* is the Verb itself, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill, filled; Love, loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Passive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs *Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can, and Am*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love*, Page 32. &c.

3. An English Verb hath different Terminations for the Persons of the singular Number. The *Present* hath three or four. The first Person is the Verb itself; the second ends in *est* or *st*; the third in *eth, es* or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est* or *t*. But the third Person singular of the *Preterite*, and all the Persons plural, both of it and the *Present*, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Present* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular English Verbs*; but it is to be noted, 1. That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite Tense*, and the *Passive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only such Words as are native and originally *English*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular the *Passive Participle* is the same with it. Except *Hewn, Mown, Show, Snown, Sown*.

6. These *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following Heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, sh, f, k, p, x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and sometimes after *l, m, n, r*, when a short Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't, Snatch't, Fisht', Walk't, Dwelt, Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one; as *Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt*, from *keep, sleep, weep, creep, sweep, leap*; as also sometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as *fed, felt; Dream, dreamt; Mean, meant; Leave, left*.

(2) When the *Present* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preterite* is sometimes the same with it; as, *Read, Cast, Hurt, Burst, Hit, Quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the last is left out; as, *Spreid, spred; Lead, led; Feed, fed; Bleed, bled; Meet, met*. When a Consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent; Lend, lent; Send, sent; Rend, rent; Gird, girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Lists.

I. Such as have their *Preterite* and *Participle Passive* the same.

<i>Awake, awoke.</i>	<i>Find, found.</i>	<i>Pay, paid.</i>	<i>Sting, stung.</i>
<i>Abide, abode.</i>	<i>Flee, fled.</i>	<i>Say, said.</i>	<i>Swing, swung.</i>
<i>Befeech, besought.</i>	<i>Fling, flung.</i>	<i>Seek, sought.</i>	<i>Swim, swum.</i>
<i>Bind, bound.</i>	<i>Grind, ground.</i>	<i>Sell, sold.</i>	<i>Teach, taught.</i>
<i>Bring, brought.</i>	<i>Gild, gilt.</i>	<i>Sit, sat.</i>	<i>Tell, told.</i>
<i>Buy, bought.</i>	<i>Hang, hung.</i>	<i>Shine, shone.</i>	<i>Think, thought.</i>
<i>Catch, caught.</i>	<i>Hear, heard.</i>	<i>Spin, spun.</i>	<i>Work, wrought.</i>
<i>Dig, dug.</i>	<i>Lay, laid.</i>	<i>Spring, sprung.</i>	<i>Win, won.</i>
<i>Drink, drunk.</i>	<i>Lose, lost.</i>	<i>Stand, stood.</i>	<i>Wind, wound.</i>
<i>Fight, fought.</i>	<i>Make, made.</i>	<i>Stick, stuck.</i>	<i>Wring, wrung.</i>

ir,	bore,	born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrunk.
zin,	began,	begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
l,	bad,	bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
it,	beat,	beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slidden.
c,	bit,	bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
w,	blew,	blown.	Hew, hewed, hewen.	Strike, struck, stricken.
ide,	chid,	chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
ose,	chose,	chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
ave,	clove,	clest.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
me,	came,	come.	Ly., lay, lay'n.	Swear, swore, sworn.
ow,	crew,	crow'd.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swell'd, swoln.
re,	durst,	dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
,	did,	done.	Rise, rose, rison.	Tear, tore, torn.
aw,	drew,	drawn.	Run, ran, run.	Thrive, thrrove, thriven.
ive,	drove,	driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
t,	eat,	eaten.	Seeth, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
ll,	fell,	fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
r,	flew,	flown.	Shear, shorc, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
rsake, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot,	shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.	

These Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, For-, Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank*, are seldom used. *it, Beseech'd, Catcht, Work'd, Digg'd, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ, Besongt, Caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one Consonant, that Consonant is the most Part doubled before ing, ed, est, edst and eth, as, *Worship, wor-  
sping, worshipped, worshippes, worshippedst, worshippeth*: As also before ; as, *Bid, bidden.*

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common English Verbs; as, *Lov'd, lov'st, for loved, lovest*) begins now to be dis-  
ed by the most polite Writers in Prose: but Poets still use it, tho' not  
much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the Preterite Active and the Participle Passive (when one word serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or have or had with it, it is the Pre-  
terite Active; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the  
Participle Passive.

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Risen, Fallen, Grown, Withered*; and such  
Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the Passive Signs AM, ART,  
instead of HAVE in the Perfect Tense; and WAS, WAST, &c. instead  
HAD in the Pluperfect; as, *Veni, I am come; Veneram, I was come.*

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin Perfect frequently answers both to HAVE  
d DID, (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they seem to be thus  
distinguished. DID or ED, &c. respects a certain past Time, in which the  
ing was finished, or a-finishing; as, *I wrote, or did write yesterday*: HAVE  
her speaks of a Thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to a  
particular Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter, i.e. just  
now; I have read of Julius Cæsar, i. e. some time or other*. The first of these  
is called the Preterperfect Definite, and the other the Preterperfect Indefinitive.

NOTE, 4. That SHALL and WILL by Mr. Brightland are thus dif-  
ferent;

## 50 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

In the First Person simply SHALL foretells;  
In WILL a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.  
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;  
WILL simply then foretells the future Feat.

By Mr. Turner thus,

WILL imports the Will or Purpose of the Person it is joined with  
SHALL implies the Will of another, who promises or threatens to do it  
Thing, or cause it to be done, permits it, commands it, or the like.

### De Formatione Verborum.

**Q**uartuor sunt Terminatio-  
nes Verbi, à quibus re-  
liquæ omnes formantur; sciz.  
o Præsentis, i Præteriti, um  
Supini; & re Infinitivi, hoc  
modo;

1. Ab o formantur am &  
em.

2. Ab i formantur ram, rim,  
ro, sem, se.

3. Ab um formantur u, us,  
& rus.

4. A re formantur reliquæ  
omnes; nempe bam, bo, rem,  
e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.

### Of the Formation of Verbs.

**T**here are four Terminatio-  
nes of a Verb, from which  
the rest are formed; namely,  
of the Present, of the Preterit  
um of the Supine, and re of the  
Infinitive, after this Manner;

1. From o are formed am  
and em.

2. From i, ram, rim, it  
sem and se.

3. U, us and rus are formed  
from um.

4. All other Parts from re  
come; as bam, bo, rem, a, e, on  
i, ns, and dus, dum, di, do and di

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS viz. the Present of the Indicative in O, the Preterite or Perfect in I, the first Supine in UM, and the Present of the Infinitive in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the Verb) gives Origin to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The Preterite, the first Supine and the Present of the Infinitive come from it immediately, and all the rest from them; except the Future of the Indicative in am, and the Present of the Subjunctive in em or am, which by this Scheme are also formed immediately from the Present in O.

It is to be noted, that the Preterites and Supines of the First Conjugation end commonly in avi and atum, of the Second in ui and itum, and of the Fourth in ivi and itum. But the Third Conjugation cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the Present of the Infinitive, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of Formation, I have for the Ease of the Learner, put the Terminations instead of the Moods and Tenses; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed.

## Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 51

I. From the Present of the Indicative are formed the Future of the Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations in *am*, and the Present of the Subjunctive of the First in *em*, and of the other three in *an*.

II. From the Perfect of the Indicative are formed the Pluperfett of it, the Perfect, Pluperfett and Future of the Subjunctive, and the Perfect of the Infinitive.

III. From the First Supine is formed the Last Supine, the Participle Perfect and Future Active.

IV. From the Present of the Infinitive are formed the Imperfect of the Indicative, the Future of the same when it ends in BO, (viz. in the first and second Conjugations,) the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the Participles Present and Future Passive, and the Gerunds.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in IO of the Third Conjugation retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *eas*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the Present of the Infinitive and Imperfect of the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 2. That the last Person Plur. of the Imperative may be formed by adding *o* to the same Person of the Present of the Indicative; as, *Amanit amantio*; *docent*, *docente*.

NOTE, 3. That the Affactive Voice is formed from the same Tenses of the Active, (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the Present of the Infinitive Passive of the Third Conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the Second Person of the Present of the Indicative Active; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is Deponent, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as *Profiscitor*, *proficieti*; *moriator*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the Present of the Infinitive Active, and the Second Person of the Indicative and Imperative Passive in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the Second Person Plural of the Present of the Indicative and of the Imperative, are the same in the Passive Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the Principal Parts are wanting, these Parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reason Grammarians give Supines to a great many Verbs which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the Participles formed from them are found; and they suppose likewise all Deponent Verbs of old have had the Active Voice, and consequently Supines, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the Fourth in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are Eight Verbs in *eo* of the First Conjugation, viz. *beo*, *creo*, *scree*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauseo*, *nucleo*. There are Twenty four in *io* of the First, viz. *amplio*, *bafio*, *brevio*, *concilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *bio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *pio*, *propitio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *satio*, *saucio*, *focio*, *somnio*, *spatio*, *suavio*, or rather *suavior*, *vario*, *vicio* with some other less common; as, *decurio*, *succenturio*, *fascio*, *retalio*, *strio tertio*, &c. and Twelve of the Third, viz. *capiio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specchio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the Body, or *Essential Part* of the Verb by a Division or Hyphen. And perhaps this alone without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but *inf* of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *io*, *of the Present of the Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential*

## 52 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *tertites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to read all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllable to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Legi*. 2. In Verbs in *is* we are to add or omit the *i*, as in Note 1.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are derived from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

### *De Verbis Irregularibus.*

**I**RREGULARIA Verba vulgò recensentur octo, viz. *Sum, Eo, Quo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, & Fio*, cum Compositijs.

### Of Irregular Verbs.

**T**HE IRREGULAR Verbs are commonly reckoned Eight, viz. *Sum, Eo, Quo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero and Fio*, with their Compounds.

### S U M.

*Sum, fui, esse, To be.*

### INDICATIVUS. SUBJUNCTIVUS.

#### Præfens.

<i>Sum,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may or can be,</i>
<i>Es,</i>	<i>Thou art,</i>	<i>Sis,</i>	<i>Thou mayst or canst be,</i>
<i>Est:</i>	<i>He is :</i>	<i>Sit;</i>	<i>He may or can be :</i>
<i>Sumus,</i>	<i>We are,</i>	<i>Simus,</i>	<i>We may or can be,</i>
<i>Estis,</i>	<i>Ye are,</i>	<i>Sitis,</i>	<i>Ye may or can be,</i>
<i>Sunt.</i>	<i>They are.</i>	<i>Sint.</i>	<i>They may or can be.</i>

#### Imperfictum,

<i>Eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>Essem,</i>	<i>I might, &amp;c. be,</i>
<i>Eras,</i>	<i>Thou wast,</i>	<i>Esseſ,</i>	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>
<i>Erat,</i>	<i>He was :</i>	<i>Esſet:</i>	<i>He might be,</i>
<i>Eramus:</i>	<i>We were,</i>	<i>Esſemus,</i>	<i>We might be,</i>
<i>Eratis,</i>	<i>Ye were,</i>	<i>Esſetis,</i>	<i>Ye might be,</i>
<i>Erant.</i>	<i>They were.</i>	<i>Esſent.</i>	<i>They might be,</i>

#### Perfictum.

<i>Fui,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>Fuerim,</i>	<i>I may have been,</i>
<i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast been,</i>	<i>Fueris,</i>	<i>Thou mayst have been,</i>
<i>Fuit:</i>	<i>He hath been :</i>	<i>Fuerit;</i>	<i>He may have been :</i>
<i>Fuimus,</i>	<i>We have been,</i>	<i>Fuerimus,</i>	<i>We may have been,</i>
<i>Fuistis,</i>	<i>Ye have been,</i>	<i>Fueritis,</i>	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
<i>Fuerunt,</i>	<i>They have been,</i>	<i>Fuerint,</i>	<i>They may have been.</i>

*Plusquam-perfictum.*

Fueram, I had been,	Fuisse, I might, &c. have	}
Fueras, Thou hadst been,	Fuisse, Thou mightest have	
Fuerat: He had been:	Fuisse: He might have	
Fueramus, We had been,	Fuissemus, We might have	
Fueratis, Ye had been,	Fuissetis, Ye might have	

Fuerant. They had been.	Fuissent. They might have	}

*Futurum.*

Ero, I shall or will be,	Fuero, I shall have been,
Eris, Thou shalt or wilt be,	Fueris, Thou shalt have been,
Erit: He shall or will be:	Fuerit: He shall have been:
Erimus, We shall or will be,	Fuerimus, We shall have been,
Eritis, Ye shall or will be,	Fueritis, Ye shall have been,
Eront. They shall or will be.	Fuerint. They shall have been.

*IMPERATIVUS.*

Es vel } Esto, } Esto: } Este vel } Estote, }	Be thou.	Præf. Esse, To be.
		Perf. Fuisse, To have been.
	Let him be.	Fut. Futurum To be about to esse vel fuisse. be.
	Be ye.	

Sunto. Let them be. Fut. Futurus. About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, præsum, obsum, subsum, supersum, insum, profsum & possum*. The first eight are conjugated as the simple SUM: *Insum* wants the Preterite and its Descendants; for we do not use *Infui, infuisti, infueram, &c.*

¶ PROSUM, To do good, has a d where SUM begins with e; as,

IND. { Pr. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro-sunt.  
Im. Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.

SUB. Im. Prod-essem, prod-elles, prod-esset: prod-essemus, &c.

IMPERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este. INFINIT. Præf. Prod-esse.

POSSUM should be *pot-sum*, (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*) but for the better Sound t is changed into s before another, and retained before any other Letter: And for the same Reason f is always taken away. *Possim* and *Possē* are contracted for *Potessim, potessē*, which yet are to be found in some old Authors; thus,

¶ Possim, potui, possē, To be able.

*INDICATIVUS.*

Pr. Possum, potes, potest: possimus, potestis, possunt.	}
Im. Pōteram, poteras, poterat: poteramus, poteratis, poterant.	
Per. Potui, potuisti, potuit: potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt u-vere.	
Pl. Potueram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.	
Fu. Potero, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.	su

## 54 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

### SUB JUNCTIVUS.

*Praef.* Possim, possis, possit: possimus, possitis, p  
*Imp.* Possem, posses, possit: possimus, possitis, p  
*Perf.* Potuerim, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, p  
*Plur.* Potuimus, potuisses, potuisset: potuimus, potuisset, p  
*Fut.* Potuero, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, p

### INFINITIVUS.

*Praef.* Posse.

*Perf.* Potuisse.

The reſt

### E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, To go.

### INDICATIVUS.

*Praef.* Eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.  
*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.  
*Perf.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverui.  
*Plur.* Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverar.  
*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

### SUB JUNCTIVUS.

*Pr.* Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eat.  
*Im.* Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.  
*Per.* Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.  
*Plur.* Ivissim, ivisses, ivisset; ivissimus, ivissetis, ivissentis.  
*Fut.* Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

### IMPERATIVUS.

*Praef.*  $\{\begin{matrix} i, \\ ito \end{matrix}$ ;  $\{\begin{matrix} ite, \\ itote, \end{matrix}$  cunto.

### INFINITIV

*Praef.* Ire,  
*Perf.* Ivisse,  
*Fut.* Iturum esse v.

### PARTICIPIA.

*Praef.* Lens, Gen. euntis.  
*Fu.* Iturus, -a, -um.

### SUPINA.

1. Itum.  
 2. Itu.

### GERU

Eundum  
 Eundi.  
 Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperative, and Future in ibo, of which there are many Examples in Plautine, and some in Virgil and Horace.

After the same Manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, adeo, abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, subeo, pereo, coeo, ineo, praeo, addeo, transeo; Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adendum, &c. regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

OTE. That in the Compounds *ivi*, *ivisi*, &c. are seldom used, but are contracted into *ii*, *isti*; as, *adii*, *adiisti*, and sometimes *adisti*: So *am*, *aderim*, &c.

UEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the same Way; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Partis* are scarcely in use.

---

## V O L O.

*Volo, volui, velle, To will, or be willing.*

### *INDICATIVUS.*

- ✓. Vol-o, vis, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.
- . Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
- ✓. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerent.
- . Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
- . Vol-am, voles, volet; volemus, voletis, volent.

### *SUBJUNCTIVUS.*

- ✓. Vel-im, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.
- . Vel-lem, velles, vellet; vellemus, velleris, vellent.
- ✓. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
- . Vol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.
- . Vol-vero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

### *INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPUM.*

- ✓. Velle. Perf. Voluisse. Praef. Volens.  
*The rest are wanting.*
- 

## N O . L O.

*Nolo, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.*

### *INDICATIVUS.*

- ✓. Nolo, non-vis, non-vult; nolumus, non-vultis, nolunt.
- . Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
- ✓. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, uerunt, uere.
- . Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, uerant.
- . Nol-am, noles, nolet; nolemus, noletis, noalent.

### *SUBJUNCTIVUS.*

- ✓. Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
- . Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nollient.

## 56 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

*Perf.* Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Plus.* Nol-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisserent.

*Fut.* Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

**IMPERATIVUS. INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIUM.**

*Præf.* { Noli, { nolite, | *Pr.* Nolle. *Præf.* Nolens.  
{ Nolito; { nolitote. | *Per.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

### M A \ L O .

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

*I N D I C A T I V U S.*

*Præf.* Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mayultis, malunt.

*Imp.* Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

*Per.* Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

*Plus.* Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

*Fut.* Mal-am, -es, -et, &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

*S U B J U N C T I V U S.*

*Præf.* Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.

*Imp.* Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.

*Perf.* Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Plus.* Mal-uissim, -uisses, -uisset; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uisserent.

*Fut.* Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*I N F I N I T I V U S.*

*Præf.* Malle.

*Perf.* Maluisse.

**NOTE.** That *Volo*, *Nolo* and *Malo*, retain something of the Third Conjugation, for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis* are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and o is changed into u, for of old they said *Volt*, *voltis*.

*Nolo* is compounded of *Non volo*, and *Malo* of *magis volo*.

### F E R O .

**V O X A C T I V A .**

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

*I N D I C A T I V U S.*

~~fero~~ ferre ferre; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

ferat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.

tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt

ferat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant

feremus, fereatis, ferent.

*S U B J U N C T I V U S.*

- æf. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
- p. Ferem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
- f. Tul-exim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
- æf. Tul-issem, -illes, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
- f. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

*I M P E R A T I V U S.      I N F I N I T I V U S.*

- |            |          |                                  |
|------------|----------|----------------------------------|
| æf. { Fer, | { ferte, | Pr. Ferre.                       |
| Ferto,     | fertote, | Per. Tulisse.                    |
|            |          | Fut. Laturum esse<br>vel fuisse. |

*P A R T I C I P I A.*

- |                      |           |                      |
|----------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| æf. Ferens.          | 1. Latum. | Ferendum,            |
| f. Laturus, -a, -um. | 2. Latu.  | Ferendi,<br>Ferendo. |
- 

*S U P I N A.*

1. Latum.  
2. Latu.

*G E R U N D I A.*

- Ferendum,  
Ferendi,  
Ferendo.

*V O X P A S S I V A.*

Feror, latus, ferri.

*I N D I C A T I V U S.*

- æf. Feror, { ferris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
- p. Fer-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
- f. Latus sum vel fui, latus es vel fuisti, &c.
- f. Latus eram vel fueram, latus eras vel fueras, &c.
- t. Ferar, { fereris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

*S U B J U N C T I V U S.*

- æf. Ferar, { feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
- p. Ferrer, { ferrgris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
- f. Latus sim vel fuerim, latus sis vel fueris, &c.
- f. Latus essem vel fuisssem, latus essem vel fuisse, &c.
- t. Latus fuero, latus sucris, &c.

*I M P E R A T I V U S.*

- æf. Ferre, fertor; ferimini, ferunctor.

*I N F I N I T I V U S.      P A R T I C I P I A.*

- |                            |                |          |
|----------------------------|----------------|----------|
| æf. Ferri.                 | Perf. Latus,   | -a, -um. |
| rf. Latum esse vel fuisse. | Fut. Ferendus, | a, -um.  |
| Latum iti.                 |                |          |

## 58 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fer, feris, fert, ferre, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor* being contracted of *ferit, feruis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *fertor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere*; which in like Manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dive, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same Way as the Simple, as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; Aufero, abstuli, ablatum; Difero, distuli, dilatum; Confero, contuli, collatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Efero, extuli, elatum; So Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, preser-*

### F I O.

*Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.*

#### *I N D I C A T I V U S.*

<i>Præf.</i> <i>Fio,</i>	<i>fis,</i>	<i>fit;</i>	<i>sumus,</i>	<i>fitis,</i>	<i>fiunt.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>Fiebam,</i>	<i>fiebas,</i>	<i>fiebat;</i>	<i>fiebamus,</i>	<i>fiebatis,</i>	<i>fiebant.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>Factus sum vel fui,</i>	<i>factus es vel fuisti,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			
<i>Pluf.</i> <i>Factus eram vel fueram,</i>	<i>factus eras vel fueras,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			
<i>Fut.</i> <i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fies,</i>	<i>fiet;</i>	<i>siemus,</i>	<i>fietis,</i>	<i>fient.</i>

#### *S U B F U N C T I V U S.*

<i>Præf.</i> <i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fias,</i>	<i>fiat;</i>	<i>siamus,</i>	<i>fiat;</i>	<i>fiant.</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>Fierem,</i>	<i>fieres,</i>	<i>fieret;</i>	<i>fieremus,</i>	<i>fieretis,</i>	<i>fierent.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> <i>Factus sis vel fuerim,</i>	<i>factus sis vel fueris,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			
<i>Pluf.</i> <i>Factus essem vel suissem,</i>	<i>factus esses vel suisses,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			
<i>Fut.</i> <i>Factus fuerom,</i>	<i>factus fueris,</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>			

#### *I M P E R A T I V U S.*

*Præf.* { *Fi \**, fito; { *fite*,  
          { *Fito*,      *fitote*,      *fiunto*.

#### *I N F I N I T I V U S.*

<i>Pr.</i> <i>Fieri.</i>	
<i>Per.</i> <i>Factum esse vel suisse.</i>	
<i>Fut.</i> <i>Factum iri.</i>	

#### *P A R T I C I P I A.*

<i>Per.</i> <i>Factus,</i>	-a,	-um.	
<i>Fut.</i> <i>Faciendus,</i>	-a,	-um.	

#### *S U P I N U M.*

*Factu.*

\* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib. 2. Sat 5, ver. 38. Fi cognitor ipsi*, according to the best MSS. and Editions.

NOTE,

**NOTE, i.** That *Fio* is the Passive of *Facia*, To make, (which is regular) instead of *Factor*, which is not in use: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior*, *affictus*, *affici*; *perficior*, *perfictus*, *perfici*.

**NOTE, 2.** That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. Act. *fac*, and their Passive Form (when used) *fio*; as, *Calefacio*, *lucrificatio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But these compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *face* and *ficior*. There are some compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *Facio* is changed into *fico* of the First Conjugation; as, *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the *Irregular Verbs* may be reduced EDO, *to eat*, which in some of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

<b>IND.</b> <i>Pref.</i> Edo,	<i>es</i> ,	<i>est</i> ;	<i>estis</i> , - - -
<b>SUB.</b> <i>Imp.</i> Estim,	<i>esset</i> ,	<i>esset</i> ;	<i>essetis</i> , <i>essent</i> .
<b>IMP.</b> Es <i>vel</i> esto.	- - -	<i>este</i> <i>vel</i> <i>estote</i> .	INFIN. <i>Esse</i> .

Likewise its Compounds *Caneda*, *canes*, *canest*, &c. and

Likewise its Compounds, *Comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *Exedo*, *exes*, *exest*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *Edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *Ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

### Of ~~Prefective~~ Verbs.

**T**HO' some of the *Irregular Verbs* already mentioned want some of their Parts, and upon that Account may be called also *Defective Verbs*, yet by **DEFECTIVE Verbs** here we chiefly understand such as want considerable Branches, or are used only in few Tenses and Persons. We shall set down these that most frequently occur. I. AIO, *I say*; IN-QUAM, *I say*; FOREM, *I should be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll see to it, or I will do it*; AVE and SALVE, *God save you, Hail, Good-morrow*; CEDO, *tell, or give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray*.

IND.	Pres. Aio,	ais	ait;	- - - - -	aiunt.
	Imp. Ai-ebam,	-ebas	.ebat; -ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
	Perf. - - -	aisti.	- - -	- - -	- - -

SUB. *Pras.* - - - aias, aiat; - - - aiatis, aiant.  
IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIP. *Pras.* aiens.]  
~~Pras. Invenit, inquis, inquit, inquimus, inquid, inquit.~~

INDIC.	<i>Pref.</i> Inquami, inquis, inquit;      inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt. <i>Imp.</i> - - - inquietabat; - - - - inquietabant. <i>Perf.</i> - - - inquieti, <i>Fut.</i> - - - inquietes, inquiet;
--------	---

**IMPERAT.** inque, -ito. **PARTICIP.** *Pref.* inquiens.

**SUB.** { *Imp.* } Forem, fores, foret; foremus, foretis, forent.  
          { *Pluf.* }

**INF.** Fore, to be, or *to* be about to be, the same with *futurum esse*.  
Cf. Prof. Aufsatz aufs-aufsa-

SUB.	<i>Pres. Ausim, ausis, ausit;</i>	<i>Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit;</i>	<i>Fut. Faxo, faxis, faxit;</i>	<i>faxint.</i>
------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	----------------

**NOTE.** That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Ave,	{	avete,	{	INF.	{	avere.
Aveto,	{	avetote,	{			
IMPERAT. Salve.	{	salvete	{			salvere.

*IMPERAT.* Salve, Salvete,  
Salveto, Salvete,  
Cedo, cedite.

*ND. Prof. Quæſo,* quæſumus.

H 2

## 60 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

II. These three Verbs ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odidsem, odero, odisse.  
Memini, memineram, meminerim, meminissim, meminero, meminisse.  
Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpissim, cœpero, cœpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Tenses; as, *Memini*, I remember, or I have remembered; *Memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, or I have hated *Cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

*Memini* hath also the Imperative *Memento*, Remember thou; *Memento te*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembiring, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add NOVI, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, tho' it comes from *Nosco*, which is complete.

• NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voss. Analog. Lib. III. Cap. 39.*

NOTE, 2. That the Particiles *Cœptus* and *Osus*, with its Compound *Perosus*, *Exosus*, are in use among the best Authors; but *Perodij* and *Exod* are not.

III. *Faris*, To speak, wants the first Person of the Present Indic. and perhaps the whole Present of the Subjunctive, for we do not say *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der* To be given. The Compounds of the first; as, *Effor*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other; as, *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rarely to be found, but among Poets; as, *Infit*, he begins; *Defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis* for *Si vis*; If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou darest

### Of Impersonal Verbs.

These are also a kind of Defective Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the Third Person Sing. They have the Sign IT before them in English; as, *Pœnitet*, it repents; *Placet*, it pleases: And are thus conjugated;

Pref.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusf.	Futur.
IND.	pœnitet	pœnitibat	pœnituit	pœnituerat
SUB.	pœniteat	pœniteret	pœnituerit	pœnituerit
INF.	pœnitere		pœnituisse	

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especial such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

Pref.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Fut.
Ind.	Pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum	{ est, -atum	{ erat, fuerat	pugnabitu
		{ fuit,	{ fuerat,	
•	Pugnetur, pugnaretur, pugnatum	{ sit, -atum	{ esset, suisset, -atum	
		{ fuerit,		
	pnari, - - - - pugnatum	{ esse, - suisce,	- - - - pugnat	

## Part II. Chap. IV. of Participle. 61

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any Person or Number, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the Cases which they govern; as, *punit me, te, illum*; I repent, thou repentest, he repenteſt, instead of *Ego puniteo, &c.* which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mibi, tibi, illi*, It pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleaseſt, &c. *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. Note, 2. That Impersonals are not used in the Imperative, but instead of we take the Subjunctive.

NOTE, 3. That Impersonal Verbs are very often used personally, especially in the plural Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Praestat, &c.* For we say, *Tu mibi solum places; Nulli noces; Multo homini accident, contingent, eveniunt; Parvum parvus decent, &c.* But it is to be remarked that they are generally *Impersonal*, when an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood follows; for tho' I can lay, *Tu places mibi*, yet I cannot say, *Si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot say, *Ego contigit esse domi*, but *Me contigit esse domi*, or *Mibi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille moreretur*; but not *Ille evenit mori*.

[I shall not here enquire what is the Word understood to Impersonal Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like Signification; as, *Pugna pugnatur*, or the Word *Res* or *Negotium*, or the Infinitive Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word understood can never be a Person properly so called, but a Thing; for which Reason, and the Want of the two primary Persons, viz. the first and second, they are called *Impersonal*, tho' some are much offended with the Name.]

## C A P. IV. De Participio.

**T**ria sunt præcipue consideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus, Significatio, & Declinatio.*

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, *Præsens, Præteritum & Futurum.*

Participia      {  
Præs.      {  
Præt.      {  
Fut.      {  
Temp.      {  
finunt in      {  
ns.      {  
tus, sus, xus.      {  
rus, dus.      {

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa* vel *Pas- siva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus descen- dunt.

## C H A P. IV. Of Participle.

**T**here are three Things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification and Declension.

I. The Tenses of Participles are three, the Present, Preterite and Future.

Particip.      {  
Pres.      {  
Pret.      {  
Fut.      {  
Temp.      {  
finunt in      {  
ns.      {  
tus, sus, xus.      {  
rus, dus.      {

II. The Signification of Participles is either Active or Passive, or Neuter, after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.

## 62 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

Participia	in <i>ns</i> & <i>rus</i> plerumque sunt <i>Activa</i> .	Participles	in <i>ns</i> and <i>rus</i> are generally Active.
	in <i>dus</i> semper <i>Passiva</i> .		in <i>dus</i> always Passive.
	in <i>tus</i> , <i>sus</i> , <i>xus</i> , plerumque sunt <i>Passiva</i> , interdum verò <i>Activa</i> , vel etiam <i>Communia</i> .		in <i>tus</i> , <i>sus</i> , <i>xus</i> , are generally Passive, sometimes Active, or also Common.

III. Omnia Participia sunt Adjectiva: quae desinunt in *ns* sunt Tertiæ Declinationis, reliqua autem omnia Primæ & Secundæ.

III. All Participles are adjectives: These which end i are of the Third Declension but all the rest are of the and Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, w in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it partakes of a Noun and a Verb, having taders and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two Participles, one of Present Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of the Future ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two Participles, one of the Present ending in *tus*, *sus* or *xus*; as *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bended, (to which some add one in *uus*, viz. *Mortuus* Dead:) And another of the Future ending in *dus*; as *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two Participles, as the *Active*; as *Sedens*, Sitting, *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. ACTIVE INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three Participles, *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want, *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Gens*, Grieving; *Doliturus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: sometimes four; as *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch; *gilitatus*, Watched; *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four Participles, as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*, About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken; *Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing, *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed, *Dignitus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, I. That in some Deponent Verbs the Participle Perfect hath an *Active* and *Passive* Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active; as, *Testatus*, having testified, or being testified. So *Mentitus*, *ditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked; and such like, are not Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *ns*, *Ignorant*, *Elegans*, Neat, *Circumspectus*, *Circumspect*, *Tacitus*, *Falus*, *False*, *Profusus*, *Prodigal*, &c. are not Participles, because they don't signify Time.

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach y near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Potibundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present Time*; only y signify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. llius*, *Lib. 2. Cap. 15.* or according to others, they signify the same th the *Participles* of *Frequentative Verbs*, when these are not in Use. : *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

### APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, because of their near Relation to rbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial Words*) are a Sort of instantive Nouns expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the abstract. GERUNDS are Substantives of the second Declension, and come in all their Cases, except the *Vocative*. SUPINES are Substantives of fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in U, which makes the *Second*. [Vossius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the Last Supine may sometimes be a tative; as, *Durum tactu*, i. e. tactui; For the Datives of the Fourth Declension of old ended in u. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes Notice that tho' these vives have sometimes other Cases, (as *irrisui* etc) yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the First come after Verbs of Motion, and the second after Adjective Nouns: Thus *dignus irrisu* is a Supine (according to m) Non sine *irrisu* audientium, is not.]

### *De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.*

#### C A P. V.

#### *De Adverbio.*

[N ADVERBIO potissimum spectanda est ejus Significatio.

Adverbiorum Significationes irae sunt: earum vero praeceps ad sequentia capita revoiri possunt.

### Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

#### C H A P. V.

#### Of Adverb.

**I**N an ADVERB is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quali Manner of their Signification.

Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly those of Time and Order,

# 64 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, viz. Adverbs signifying Motion Sibi? Where?		2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, viz. such as signify, (1) Being in Time, either	
Hic, Illic, Isthic, Ibi, Intus, Foris, Ubique, Nusquam, Alicubi, Alibi, Ubivis, Ibidem, Quo? Huc, Illuc, Isthuc, Intro, Foras, Eo, Alio, Aliquo, Ecclm, Quo Rsum? Versus, Horsum, Illosum, Sursum, Deorsum, Antrosum, Retrosum, Dextrosum, Sinistrosum, UNDE? Hinc, Illinc, Isthinc, Inde, Aliunde, Ncunde, Sicunde, Utrinque, Superne, Inferne, Cœlitus, Funditus, QUA? Hac, Illac, Ithac, Alia,		Nunc, Hodie, Tunc, Tum, Heri, Dudum, Pridem, Pridie, Nudius tertius, Unper, Janjam, Mox, Statim, Protinus, Illico, Cras, Postridie, Perendie, Nonendum, QUANDO? Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum, Semper, Nunquam, Interim, Quotidie, Diu, Quamdiu? Tamdiu, Jamdiu, Jamduchum, Jampridem, QUOTIES? Saep, Raro, Toties, Aliquoties, Viciplism, Alternatim, Rursus, Iterum, Subinde, Identidem, Scenel, Bis, Ter, Quater, Once, Twice, Thrce, Four times, & 3. Add	
(or <i>R</i> if) (1) in a Place.		Now. To day. Then. Yesterday. Heretofore. The Day before. Three Days ago. Lately. Presently. Immediately. By and by. Instantly. Straightway. To-morrow. The Day after. Two Days hence. Not yet. When? Sometimes. Ever. Never. In the meantime. Daily. Long. How long? So long. Long ago.	
(2) to a Place.		(2) Continuance of Time.	
(3) towards a Place.		(2) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time.	
4. from a Place.		How often? Often. Seldom. So often. For several times. By Turns. Again. Ever and ones.	
by a Place.		Once. Twice. Thrce. Four times, & 3. Add	

- Absolute, defining,**
1. **de,** *Then.* **Deinceps,** *So forth.* **Primò,** *-um, First.*
  2. **inde,** *Thereafter.* **Denuo,** *Of new.* **Secundò,** *-um, Secondly.*
  3. **hinc,** *Henceforth.* **Denique,** *Finally.* **Tertiò,** *-um, Thirdly.*
  4. **pro,** *Moreover.* **Postremo,** *Lastly.* **Quartò,** *-um, Fourthly.*
- II. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are their Absolute or Comparative.**

1. **QUALITY** simply; *as, Bene, well; male, ill; fortiter, bravely:* And innumerable others that come from Adjective Nouns or Particiles.
2. **CERTAINTY;** *as, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nz, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni, why not? omnino, certainly.*
3. **CONTINGENCE;** *as, Forte, forsan, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. **NEGATION;** *as, Non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; neutiquam, by no means; minime, nothing less.*
5. **PROHIBITION;** *as, Ne, not.*
6. **SWEARING;** *as, Hercole, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.*
7. **EXPLAINING;** *as, Utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.*
8. **SEPARATION;** *as, Scorsum, apart; separatim, separately; sibilatum, one by one; viriūm, Man by Man; oppidatim, Town by Town, &c.*
9. **JOINING TOGETHER;** *as, Simul, unà, pariter, together; generaliter, generally; univerſaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.*
10. **INDICATION or POINTING OUT;** *as, En, ecce, lo, behold.*
11. **INTERROGATION;** *as, Cur, quare, quamobrem, why, wherefore? Num, an, whether? Quomodo, quí, how? To which add, Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.*
1. **EXCESS;** *as, Valde, maximè, magnopere, suminopere, admodum, oppido, perquam, longe, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimum, too much; prorius, penitus, omnino, altogether, wholly; magis, more; melius, better; pejus, worse; fortius, more bravely: And optimè, best; pessime, worst; fortissime, most bravely; and innumerable others of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees.*
2. **DEFECT;** *as, Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, almost; parum, little; paulo, paullulum, very little.*
3. **PREFERENCE;** *as, potius, satius, rather; potissimum, præcipue, præfertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.*
4. **LIKENESS or EQUALITY;** *as, Ita, sic, adeo, sò; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, cœu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; fatis, enough; itidem, in like Manner.*
5. **UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY;** *as, Aliter, secus, otherwise; alioqui or alioquin, else; nedium, much more or much less.*
6. **ABATEMENT;** *as, Scensim, paullatim, pedetentim, by Degrees, piece meal; vix, scarcely; ægre, hardly, with Difficulty.*
7. **EXCLUSION;** *as, Tantum, solum, modo, tantummodo, dumtaxat, deum, only.*

## 66 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one Word what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *Sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *bis*, for *in duabus*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *hunc*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but Adjective Nouns or Pronouns, having the Preposition and Substantive understood; as, *quid*, *et*, *codem*; for *ad qua*, *ea*, *eadem [locu]*; or *tus*, *ci*, *eidem [locu]* for of old these Datives ended in *s*. Thus, *qua*, *bac*, *illuc*, &c. are plain Adjectives in the *Abl. sing.* *femin.* the Word *via*, a Way, and *is*, being understood. Many of them are Compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quammodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [per] *qua re*; *quorsum*, i. e. *versus quem [locum]*; *scilicet*, i. e. *scire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *illicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *me gno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni [est] mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs of Place*, these of the First Kind answer to the Question *ubi?* the Second to *quo?* the Third to *quorsum?* the Fourth to *unde?* and the Fifth to *qua?* To which might be added a Sixth, *quaque*, How far? answered by *Usque*, until; *Hucusque*, Hitherto; *Eousque*, so far; *Hattenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Estenus*, so far as; *Quedantenus*, in some Measure. But these are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs of Time* of the First Kind answer to *quando?* of the Second to *quandiu* and *quandudum* or *quampridem?* of the Third to *quoties?*

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs of Quality* generally answer to the Question *quomodo?*

NOTE, 5. That some *Adverbs of Time*, *Place*, and *Order*, are frequently used the one for the other; as *Ubi*, where and when; *inde* from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hattenus* thus far, with respect to Place, Time or Order, &c. Other *Adverbs* also may be classed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That some *Adverbs of Time* are either *past*, *present* or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs of Time* and *Place*, doubled or with the Adjection *cunque* answer to the English Adjection *soever*; as, *ubidi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquo* or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. And the same holds also in other *Interrogative Words*; as, *qui quis*, or *quicunque*, whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantus quantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *qualis qualis* or *qualicunque*, of what Kind or Quality soever; *ut ut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howsoever, &c.

### C A P. VI.

#### *De Præpositione.*

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| I. P                     | Ræpositiones quæ regunt |
| Accusativum sunt virgin- | ti octo, viz.           |
| Ad,                      | To.                     |
| Apud,                    | At.                     |
| Ante,                    | Before.                 |

### C H A P. VI.

#### *Of Præposition.*

- |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| I. T                        | HE Præpositions which |
| Accusati-                   | govern the Accusa-    |
| tive are twenty eight, viz. | tive                  |
| Adversus,                   | Against.              |
| Adversum,                   |                       |
| Contra,                     |                       |

{On this Side.	
{About.	
Towards.	Per,
Without.	Præter,
Between, among.	Penes,
Within.	Post,
Beneath.	Pone,
Nigh to.	Secus,
For.	Secundum,
	Supra,
	Trans,
	Ultra,
	By, through.
	Besides, except
	In the Power.
	After.
	Behind.
	By, along.
	According to.
	Above.
	On the farther
	Beyond.

Præpositiones quæ re-  
tiblativum sunt quindecim-

{From.  
, Without.  
With.  
Without the Know-  
ledge of.  
Before.

Hæ quatuor interdum  
tivum, interdum Abla-

In, into,  
Under.

II. The Prepositions whi-  
vern the Ablative are Fij  
viz.

De, Of, concerning.  
E, {Of, out of.  
Ex, Pro, For.  
Præ, Before.  
Palam, With the Knowledge.  
Sine, Without.  
Tenus, Up to.

III. These four govern  
times the Accusative, and  
times the Ablative.

Super, Above.  
Subter, Beneath.

**EPOSITION** is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Rela-  
stantive Noun to another.

e, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur: and *Prope*, nigh; *Usque*  
about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned  
positions governing the Accusative; and *Procul*, far, among th  
the Ablative, are adverbs; and do not govern a Case of  
ut by the Preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first for  
the last. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is  
equently with the Accusative; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*;   
od to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

as the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is anot  
omthem, namely, their being put before a vast Number of  
be in Composition, which creates a great Variety, and gives  
ance and Beauty to the Latin Tongue.

## 68 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue

There are five or six Syllables, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they to be found in compound Words: However they generally add to the Signification of the Words with which they are compound.

Am,	signifies	round about,	{	ambio,	to fur.
Di,		asunder,		divelio,	to pul.
Dis,		again,		distraho,	to dra.
Re,		aside or apart,		relego,	to rea.
Se,		together,		sepono,	to lay
Con,		concrefco,	to gro.		

## C H A P. VII.

### Of Interjection.

**A**N INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown course, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

- Some of them express,
1. JOY; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
  2. GRIEVE; as, Ah, hei, heu, cheu, ab, alas, woes me.
  3. WONDER; as, Papæ, O strange; Vah, bab.
  4. PRAISE; as, Euge, well done.
  5. AVERSION; as, Apage, away, begone, fy, tush.
  6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, proh, O.
  7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, Atat, ha, aba,
  8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, woe, pox on't.
  9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
  10. SILENCING; as, Au, 'st, pax, silence, hush, 'st.
  11. CALLING; as, Echo, io, ho, so ho, bo, O.
  12. DERISION; as, Hui, away with.
  13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, bab.

NOTE, 1. That the same Interjection denotes sometimes one Passion, sometimes another; as, Vah, which is used to express Joy and Surprise, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are natural Sounds common to all ages.

NOTE, 3. That Nouns are used sometimes for Interjections; as, With a Pox! With a Mischief! Infandum! O shame! fy, fy! O wretched! Nefas! O the Vilany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word, and used only to represent the Passions and Actions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express Suddennes and Quicknes of the other.

## C H A P. VIII.

### Of Conjunction.

**A**CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

## Part II. Chap. VIII. of Conjunction. 69

Of these some are called,

**COPULATIVE**; *as, Et, ac, atque, que, and; etiam, quoque, item, alio;* *cum, tum, both, and.* Also their *Contraries*, *Nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor.*

**DISJUNCTIVE**; *as, Aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, either, or.*

**CONCESSIVE**; *as; Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, tho', altho', albeit.*

**ADVERSATIVE**; *as, Sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.*

**CAUSAL**; *as, Nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, because; quod, that, because.*

**ILLATIVE or RATIONAL**; *as, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, therefore; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, cum, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuchas.*

**FINAL or PERFECTIVE**; *as, Ut, uti, that, to the end that.*

**CONDITIONAL**; *as, Si, si, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided, upon Condition that; siquidem, if indeed.*

**EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE**; *as, Ni, nisi, unless, except.*

**DIMINUTIVE**; *as, Saltem, certe, at least.*

**SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE**; *as, An, anne, num, whether; ne, non, whether, not; necne, or not.*

**EXPLETIVE**; *as, Autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem, indeed.*

**ORDINATIVE**; *as, Deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.*

**DECLARATIVE**; *as, Videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely.*

**NOTE, 1.** That the same Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; *as, An, anne, &c.* are *Suspensive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The same may be said of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs of Order and Explaining*. So likewise *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wishing*, when more narrowly considered, is nothing else but the Conjunction *Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [with] understood; *as, Utinam adfuisse; Ut te Deus male perdat; supple to.* But since both of them are indeclinable, there is no great Need of being very nice in distinguishing them.

**NOTE, 2.** That other Parts of Speech compounded together, supply the place of *Conjunctions*; *as, Postea, afterwards; præterea, moreover; propterea, cause, &c.* Which are made up of the Prepositions *post*, *præter*, and *pro*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

**NOTE, 3.** That some *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, stand first in a Sentence; *as, Et, aut, nec, si, &c.* Some contrary to their natural Order, stand in the second Place, *viz. autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: And some may indifferently be put either first or second, *viz. Nam, etenim, siquidem, ergo, ideo, igitur, itaque, &c.* Hence arose the Division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive and Common.*

## 70 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

### ¶ C H A P. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially Noun and Verb.

1. ALL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *lus*, *lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and some Syllabical Adjective; as, *Lus*, *perlego*, *derequinco*, *egomet*.

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as *Iulus*, *lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as *Justitia*, *lectio*.

I. Besides the more general *Divisions* of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned p. 5 and 22. there are other particular *Divisions* of them taken from their various *Significations* and *Derivations*: The most remarkable whereof at these;

#### I. With respect to *Signification*.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, a Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a Question; as, *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* Which of the two *Qualis?* Of what Kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? And these, when they are used without a Question, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui*, *ille*, *ipse*, &c. *Alius*, *alter*, *reliquis*, *cetera*, *-um*, *qualis*, *quantus*, &c.

4. PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis*, *nullus*, *qui*, *que*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam*, *aliquis*, *neuter*, *nemo*, &c.

5. A NUMERAL Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus*, *duo*, *tres*, &c.

(2.) ORDINAL, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, &c.

(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Distributivus*]; as *Singuli*, *bini*, *terni*, &c.

(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex*, *duplex*, *triplex*, &c.

#### II. With respect to *Signification* and *Derivation*.

x. A PATRONYMIC Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive Noun derived from another Substantive proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Aetias*, the Daughter of *Aetes*; *Nerine*, the Daughter of *Ner*. Patronymicks are generally derived from the Name of the Father, but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the Grandfather or some other remarkable Person of the Family; nay sometimes from the Founder of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as *Hocides*, the Son, Grandson, Great-grandson, or one of the Posterity of *Hocas*; *Romulida*, the Romans from their first King *Romulus*; *Siculus*, *Tra-*

## Part II. Chap. IX. Appendix, &c. 71

Woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. Patronymicks of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the First, and those in *is* and *as* of the Third Declension.

2. An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abstratum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the Quality is: as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES, because, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

3. A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive proper, signifying one's Country; as *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinas*, *Edinburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in *Scotland*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgb*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Fæminus*, of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Fæmina*.

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution or lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vimum*, *senex*: *Cælestis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cælum*, *bomo*, *aerum*.

7. A VERBAL Noun [*verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lection*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucr*, swift; from *amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs* and *Prepositions*; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Craftinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE. That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative* or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

II. Pronouns are divided into four Classes, viz.

1. DEMONSTRATIVES, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.

2. RELATIVES, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.

3. POSSESSIVES, *Mens*, *tuus*, *suis*, *noster*, *vester*.

4. PATRIALS or GENTILES, *Nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are INTERROGATIVES, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs with respect to their Figure or Frame are either SIMPLE as, *Amo*, I love; Or, COMPOUND; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

## 72 . Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

2. With respect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read: or DERIVATIVE, as, *Letito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Am*: or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as, *Amo*: or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo*, *em* & *is*, &c.

5. With respect to their *Persons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*; or IMPERSONAL; as, *Penitet*.

6. With respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in O; as, *Amo*: or in R; as, *Amor*: or in M; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum*, *fio*, *existo*, I am.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*: i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Passive* and *Neuter*.

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [*Neurum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Posture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto*, *sedco*, *maneo*, *dico*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *quieto*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1.] An *Active TRANSITIVE* Verb [*Transitivum*] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An *Active INTRANSITIVE* Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question *WHOM?* or *WHAT?* if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive*; as, *Whom* or *What do you teach?* Answ. *A Boy*, the *Grammar*; If not, it is *Intransitive*: as, *What do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c.* To which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action, *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often englisch'd with the Sign of a passive Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *James abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the Passive Voice, unless impersonally used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur*, *itur*, *vehementer*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes.

## Part II. Chap. IX. Appendix, &c. 73

gether with the Signification of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their Termination, and finding that all Active Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all Passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other Classes or Kinds of them, viz. Deponent, Common, and Neuter-passive.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [Deponens] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I speak; *moriar*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [Commune] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, or I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [Neutro-passivum] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio, factus sum*, To be made. Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Adeo, ausus sum*, To dare; *gaudeo, gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kind of Derivative Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives, and Desideratives.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [Verba frequentativa] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro, curso, cursito*; *jacio, jacto, jactito*; *pello, pulsō, pulsito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [verba inceptiva] signify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the Second Person Sing. Pres. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo, cales, calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [Verba desiderativa] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Coenatio*, I desire to sup; *Esiatio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In Construction, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, Vocative Verbs, or Verbs of naming, Verbs of belonging; of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

---

In the preceeding Division of Verbs, with respect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have given a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Grammarians, who comprise under them all Intransitive Verbs, tho' their Significations be never so much Active. But this I did partly from the Reason of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Passion, and partly to give a distinct View of the Significations of Verbs without regard to their Terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions of Verbs those called NEUTRAL PASSIVES [Lat. Neutra-passiva] because originally they are Active verbs, for the primary Signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *plero*; of *exulo*, *extraficio* *eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo* indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the Active Voice it signifies passively; and in the Passive, acti-

74 *Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,*  
PARS TERTIA. PART THIRD.  
*De Sententis, sive Of Sentences, or  
Oratione.*

**S**ENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis;* *Tu legis libros;* *Tu legis libros bonos;* *Tu legis libros bonos domi* (a).

**A** SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expressed by two or more Words put together; *us;* You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

---

C A P. I.  
*De Syntax, sive Constructione.*

**S**YNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compositione.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, Concordantia & Regimen (b).

C H A P. I.  
*Of Syntax, or Construction.*

**S**YNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

Con-

---

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of Grammar; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two things absolutely necessary, *viz.* I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like Manner we know what is spoken and written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shews us how to speak the Language ourselves, and the second how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned that there is such a necessary Connection between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE. i. That the Difference between Concord and Government consists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the Accidents, that is, Gender, Case, Number or Person of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other. But in Government, the first Word (declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In *Ca* *first Word may be called the Word dwelling, and the second* *w*

*Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.*

*Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.*

*Concord is when one Word agrees with another in some Accidents.*

*Government is when a Word governs a certain Case.*

## I. De Concordantia.

**C**oncordantia est quadruplices,

1. *Adiectivi cum Substantivo.*

2. *Verbi cum Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi cum Antecedente.*

4. *Substantivi cum Substantivo.*

### R E G U L A I.

**A**djectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu ; ut,  
a *Vir b bonus.*  
a *Fæmina b casta.*  
b *Dulce a pomum.*

## I. Of Concord.

**C**oncord is fourfold,

1. *Of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

2. *Of a Verb with a Nominative.*

3. *Of a Relative with an Antecedent.*

4. *Of a Substantive with a Substantive.*

### R U L E I.

**A**n Adjective agrees with a Substantive in Gender, Number and Case ; as,  
A good Man.  
A chaste Woman.  
A sweet Apple.

### K. 2.

### R E G.

*Word directed:* In Government the first is called the *Word governing*, and the second the *Word governed*.

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Ease both of Master and Scholar, we have noted these Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the first with [a], and the second with [aa]; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the first with [b] and the second with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Substantive* is to ask the Question WHO or WHAT? to the *Adjective*; for that which answers to it is the *Substantive*. And the same Question put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, discovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent*.

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* sometimes supplies the Place of *Substantive*; as *Amicus certus*, a sure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Venison *Homo* being understood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Substantive* THING [*Negotium*] is most frequently understood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the Neuter Sex as if it were a *Substantive*; as, *Triste* [*Supple Negotium*] i. e. Res *A sad Thing*. *Bona*, [*Supple Negotia*] i. e. Res *done*, Good Thing.

## 76 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

R E G. II.

**V**ERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & persona ; ut,

a *Ego lego.*  
a *Tu b scribis.*  
a *Præceptor b docet.*

**A** Verb agrees with the nominative before it in Number and Person ; as,  
I read.  
You write.  
The Master teacheth.

### ANNOTATIONES.

3. 1. V E R B A Substantiva, Vocandi & Gestus habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandam rem pertinentem ; ut,

b *Ego a sum bb discipulus.*  
b *Tu a vocaris bb Joannes.*  
b *Illa a incedit bb Regina.*

4. 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accusativum ante se habet ; ut,

*Gaudeo b te a valere.*

1. Substantive Verbs, of Naming and Gesture have Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the thing ; as,

I am a Scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks [as] a Queen

2. ¶ EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it ; as,

I am glad that you are

3. ¶ E.

Num. 2. NOTE, That the Infinitive Mood frequently supplies the place of the Nominative ; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Num. 3. 1. Substantive Verbs are *Sum, fio, forem* and *existo*.

2. Verbs of Naming are these Passives, *Appellor, dico, vocor, nominor, cupor*; to which add, *Videor, existimor, creor, constituir, salutor, designor,*

3. Verbs of Gesture are, *Ego, incedo, venio, cubo, flo, sedco, evado, fugio, mio, somnio, maxeo, &c.*

NOTE, That any Verb may have after it the Nominative when it be to the same thing with the Nominative before it ; as *Audivi hoc prius* heard it being, [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rem publicam adolescentem*, I defended the Common Wealth [when I was] a young Man. *I will not desert [now that I am] old, Cito.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in Lat. QUOD UT] comes between two Verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the nominative Case into the Accusative, and the Verb into the Infinitive Mode. As *Aiunt regem adventore*, They say [that] the King is coming ; rather *Aiunt quod rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt turpiter vivere*, a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely ; rather *Ut illi turpiter vivant*. See p. 43.

3. ¶ *ESSE* habet eundem easum post se quem ante se ; ut,

a. *Petrus* *cupit* a *esse* b<sup>h</sup> *vir* *doflus*.

*Scio* b<sup>h</sup> *Petrum* a *esse* b<sup>h</sup> *virum* *doflum*.

b. *Mihi* b<sup>h</sup> *negligenti* a *esse* non *licet*.

*R E G.* III.  
**\*R** ELATIVUM *Qui*, quæ, quod, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero ; ut,

a. *Vir sapit* b<sup>h</sup> *qui* *pauca loquuntur*.

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus ; ut,

3. ¶ *ESSE* hath the same Case after it that it hath before it ; as,

Peter desires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

### R U L E III.

**T** HE Relative *Qui*, quæ, quod, agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number ; as,

He is a wise Man who speaks little.

1. If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be the Nominative to the Verb ; as,

*Prae-*

*Num. 5. Note, 1.* That we frequently say, *Licet nobis esse bonos*; We may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulam*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit suisse pium*, It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious: But then the Accusative, *Nos*, *te*, *illum*, &c. is understood; thus, *Licet nobis [nos] esse bonos*, &c.

*Note, 2.* That if *Eſſe*, and the other *Inſiuitives* of *Subſtantive* Verbs, Verbs of *Naming*, &c. have no *Accusative* or *Dative* before them, the Word that follows (whether *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*) is to be put in the *Nominative*; as, *Dicitur esse vir*, He is said to be a Man. *Non videtur esse fakturus*, He seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*, No Man should be called happy before his Death.

*Num. 6. Note, 1.* That the *Antecedent* is a *Subſtantive* Noun that goes before the *Relative*, and is again understood to the *Relative*. Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the Scholar to supply it every where; thus, *Beware of Idleness*, which [Idleness] is an *Enemy to Virtue*, *Cave segnitiam*, just [Segnities] enim inimica virtuti. Nay Cicero himself, but especially *Caesar*, frequently repeat the *Subſtantive*; as, *In oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic.* *Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they should meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhoeſue*, *C.eſ.*

*Note, 2.* That when the *Relative* respects a whole Sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Ioannes mortuus est, quod mibi summo dolori est*, John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

*Note, 3.* That the Person of the *Relative* is always the same with that of its *Antecedent*; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui discis*, You who learn. *Letatio que docetur*, the Lesson which is taught.

## 78 Rudiments of the Latin Tong

*Præceptor a qui b docet.*

8 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus causus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

*Deus b quem a colimus.*  
*b Cujus a munere vivimus.*  
*b Cui nullus est a similis.*  
*a A b quo facta sunt omnia.*

The Master who  
 2. But if a Nominative  
 between the Relative  
 Verb, the Relative shall  
 Case, which the Verb  
 following, or the Pre-  
 cedence before use to gov-  
 ing before use to gove-  
 God whom we worsh-  
 By whose Gift we liv-  
 To whom there is no  
 By whom all things

### A N N O T A T I O.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Substantia-  
 va singularia Conjunctione [&, ac, atque, &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

*a Petrus & Joannes b qui*  
*b sunt b docti.*

Two or more Subst-  
 gular coupled togeth-  
 Conjunction [&, ac, &c.] have a Verb, Adje-  
 tive plural; as,  
 Peter and John w-  
 ned.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the Substantives are of diff. the Adjective or Relative plural must agree with the Masculin, the Feminin or Neuter; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui.* The Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the Substantives signify things without Life, or Relative plural, must be put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Divitia in oculis sita sunt*, Riches, Honour and Glory are set before

NOTE, 2. That when two or more Nominatives are of diff. the Verb plural must agree with the First Person rather than the Second rather than the Third; as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, valemus.* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE, 3. That the Adjective or Verb frequently agree with one or Nominative that is nearest them, and are understood; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu.* Both I and you are in the Fault & tu es in culpa. *Nibil hic deest nisi carmina.* There is wanting but Charms; or, *Nibil hic nisi carmina defunt.* The Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio, sensibus est.* Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old

NOTE, 4. That Collective Nouns, because they are equivalent Number, have sometimes the Adjective or Verb in the Plurals, *Pars virginis cessit.* A Part of them were scourged. *Tum* Crowd rush.

# Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 79

## R E G. IV.

**U**NUM Substantivum cordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu ; ut,

- <sup>a</sup> Cicero <sup>b</sup> Orator.
- <sup>a</sup> Urbs <sup>b</sup> Edinburgum.
- <sup>a</sup> Filius <sup>b</sup> delicia matris sue (a).

## R U L E IV.

**O**NE Substantive agrees with another signifying the same thing in Case ; as,

- Cicero the Orator.
- The City Edinburgh.
- A Son the Darling of his Mother.

## II. De Regimine.

**R**E G I M E N est triplex,

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

## Of Government.

**G**OVERNMENT is threefold,

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

### I. REGIMENT Nominum.

#### § 1. Substantivorum.

R E G. I.

**U**NUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in Genitivo ; ut

- <sup>a</sup> Amor <sup>b</sup> Dei.
- <sup>a</sup> Lex <sup>b</sup> Naturæ.

### I. The Government of Nouns.

#### § 1. Of Substantives.

R U L E I.

**O**NE Substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the Genitive ; as,

The Love of God.

The Law of Nature.

## A N N O T A T I O N E S.

### \* I. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Adje-

1. If the last Substantive have an Adjective of Praise given

(a) To these four Concords some add a Fifth, viz. That of the Responsive agreeing with its Interrogative in Case ; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; for the Responsive, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the Interrogative, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater [dedit mihi pecuniam]. Quo cares? [Careo] libro.*

Num. II. Note, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary Sign of this Genitive.  
 Note, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Eius, illius, cuius, &c.* English *This, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose,* have their Substantives generally understood ; as, *Liber eius, [Supple Hominis, Femina, &c.] His Book.* *Libri eorum, [Supple hominum, feminarum, &c.] Their*

## 80 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

etivum laudis vel vituperii, or Dispraise joined with it, it  
in Genitivo vel Ablativo po- may be put in the Genitive or  
ni potest; ut,  
Ablative; as,

a Vir b summiæ b prudentiæ,  
vel b summiæ b prudentiæ.

a Puer b probæ b indolis, vel  
b probæ b indole.

- 13 \* 2. Adjectivum in neu-  
tro genere absque Substanti-  
vo regit Genitivum; ut,  
a Multum b pecuniaæ.  
a Quid b rei?

A Man of great Wisdom.

A Boy of a good Disposition.

2. An Adjective in the Neu-  
ter Gender without a Substan-  
tive governs the Genitive; as,  
Much Money.  
What is the Matter?

### § 2. Adjectivorum.

R E G. I.

- 14\* ADJECTIVA verba-  
lia vel affectionem  
animi significantia Genitivum  
postulant; ut,  
a Avidus b gloriae.  
a Ignarus b fraudis.  
a Memor b beneficiorum.

### § 2. Of Adjectives.

R U L E I.

VERBAL Adjectives, or  
such as signify an Affec-  
tion of the Mind require the Ge-  
nitive; as,  
Desirous of Glory.  
Ignorant of Fraud.  
Mindful of Favours.

R E G.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That these Adjectives which thus govern the Genitive, as if they were Substantives; are generally such as signify *Quantity*; as, *Mul-  
tum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum*.

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the Genitive, and upon that Account are by many thought real Substantives.

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus*.

2. OF KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, do-*

*cus, dicitus, praescius, presagius, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. OF IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rufus, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incer-  
tus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor*.

4. OF GUILT; as, *Conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus*.

5. Verbs in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax*.

And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.*

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profan-*

*Grurus.*

### Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 81

#### R E G. II.

**P**ARTITIVA & partitive posita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa quædam Numeralia, Genitivi plurali gaudent ; ut, .

a *Aliquis b Philosophorum.*

a *Senior b fratribus.*

a *Doctissimus b Romanorum.*

a *Quis b nostrum.*

a *Una b Musarum.*

a *Octavus b sapientum.*

#### R E G. III.

**A**DJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommode, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt Dativum ; ut,

a *Utilis b bello.*

a *Perniciosus b reipublicæ.*

a *Similis b patri.*

#### R U L E II.

**P**ARTITIVES and Words 15 placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and some Numerals, govern the Genitive plural ; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.

The elder of the Brothers.

The most learned of the Romans.

Which of us ?

One of the Muses.

The eighth of the wise Men.

#### R U L E III.

**A**DJECTIVES signifying 16 Profit or Disprofit, Likeness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative ; as,

Profitable for War.

Pernicious to the Common-  
Like his Father. (wealth.

L

17 ¶ Ver-

**N**um. 15. Note, 1. That it is easy to know when this Rule takes Place, resolving the Genitive into *inter* with the *Accus.* or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the *bl.* as, *Optimus Regum*, The best of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges*, or *de*, *ex*, *Regibus*.

Note, 2. That when there are two Substantives of different Genders, the Partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the last ; as, *Indus fluminum iximus*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the Substantive it governs ; as, *Pauca animalium*, *Unaquaque foenarum*.

Note, 3. That Partitives, &c. take the Genitive singular of Collective nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender, as, *Præstantissimus bræ civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

**N**um. 16. Note, 1. That some of these Adjectives govern also the Genitive ; as, *Amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, equalis, similis, dissimilis, propius, communis, &c.*

Note, 2. That Adjectives signifying Motion or Tendency to a Thing, choose rather the Accusative with AD, than the Dative ; such as, *Proclivis, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger, &c.* as,

*Est piger ad paenas Princeps, ad pramia velox*, Ovid.

Note, 3. That Adjectives signifying Fitness or the contrary, may each of them ; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello, or ad bellum*.

---

## 82 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue

17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS & Verbals in BILIS  
DUS regunt Dativum ; ut, govern the Dative ; a.  
a Amandus vel a amabilis To be beloved of :  
b omnibus.

### R E G. IV.

18\* **A** DJECTIVA dimensionem significantia RULE IV  
regunt Accusativum mensurae ; ut,  
Columna sexaginta b pedes  
a alta.

### R E G. V.

19\* **C** OMPARATIVUS RULE V  
regit Ablativum qui governs the  
resolvitur per QUAM ; ut,  
a Dulcior b melle.  
a Præstantior b auro.

### R E G. VI.

20\* **D** IGNUS, Indignus, HESE Adjecti  
Contentus, Præditus, gnus, Indignus,  
Captus & Fretus : Item Na- tus, Præditus, Captus,  
tus, Satus, Ortus, Editus, tus : Also Natus, Sa

R U L E I V  
**A** DJECTIVES Dimension goes  
Accusative of Measure

A Pillar sixty Foot

T HE Comparativus governs the  
which is resolved by Q.  
Sweeter than Honey  
Better than Gold.

T HESE Adjecti  
gnus, Indignus,  
tus, Præditus, Captus,  
tus : Also Natus, Sa

---

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this Dative.

NOTE, That Particles of the Preter Tense, and Passive Verbs especially among the Poets, have frequently the Dative, instead of theative, with A or AB ; as, Nullus eorum mihi visus est, None seen by me ; Non audior ulli, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The Adjectives of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high ; *crassus* or *densus*, thick ; *latus*, broad ; *longus*, long ; *profundus*, deep. Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch ; *palmus*, an Handbreadth ; a Foot ; *cubitus*, a Cubit ; *ulna*, an Ell ; *pasis*, a Pace, &c.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs signifying Dimension likewise have the sign of Measure ; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of Measure is put in the Genitive, as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta*, *duodecim lata*, *Liv.* *Venter ejus extat seque* And sometimes but rarely in the Genitive ; as, *Nec longiores duo dum*, *Plin.*

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitate. *eo melior*, Much better. *Nihilo peior*, Nothing worse. *Major solito* than usual. *Quo diligenter es, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vider, the less worth*, *Nihil Virgilis doctius*, There is none in *Virgil*.

### III. Chap. I. of Construction. 83

ablativum petunt;	Ortus, Editus, and the like require the Ablative; as,
b honore.	Worthy of Honour.
is b virtute.	Endued with Virtue.
is b parvo.	Content with little.
b oculis.	Blind.
b viribus.	Trusting to his Strength.
regibus.	Descended of Kings.

#### S G. VII.

TIVUM copiae aut  
æ regit Genitivum  
ivum; ut,  
us b iræ vel b ira.  
s b rationis.

#### I M E N Verborum.

Personalium.

#### E G. I.

¶ quoties possessio-  
n proprietatem aut  
gnificat, regit Geni-  
regis punire rebelles.

ntis a est dicere, non  
am.  
im a est suo duci pa-

piuntur hi Nomi-  
neum, tuum, suum,

R U L E VII.  
**A** N Adjective of Plenty 21  
or Want governs the  
Genitive or Ablative; as,  
Full of Anger.  
Void of Reason.

#### II. The Government of Verbs.

##### § 1. Of Personal Verbs.

R U L E I.  
**S** U M when it signifies 22  
Possession, Property or  
Duty, governs the Genitive;  
as,

It belongs to the King to  
punish Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool  
to say, I had not thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers  
to obey their General.

¶ These Nominatives, Me-23  
um, tuum, suum, nostrum, ve-

L 2.

no-

NOTE, 1. That *Dissentus*, *gravidus*, *refertus*; and *orbis*, ya-  
choose rather the Ablative: *Indigas*, *compos* and *impos* the Ge-

That some comprehend *Opus* and *Ufus*, when they signify Ne-  
r this Rule, as, *Quid opus est verbis?* What Need is there of  
*vid.* *Nunc viribus ufus*, Now there is Need of Strength, *Virg.*  
be remarked that these are Substantive Nouns, the very same  
*operis*, a Work, and *Ufus*, *ufus*, Use; and have the Ablative ac-  
because of the Preposition IN, which is understood. Sometime  
he Nominative by Num. 3. as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We stand  
eader. It is elegantly joined with the Participle Perfect  
*ratu*, *invento*, *fatto*, &c. *opus est*, We must advise, make  
, &c.

## 84 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

nostrum, vestrum; ut, strum, are excepted; as,  
b Tuum <sup>a</sup> est id procurare. It is your Duty to manage that.

### R E G. II.

- 24\* **M** ISEREOR, miseresco & satago regunt Genitivum; ut,  
a Miserere b civium tuorum,  
a Satagit b rerum suarum.

### R E G. III.

- 25 **E** ST pro habeo regit Dativum personæ; ut,  
a Est b mihi liber,  
a Sunt b mihi libri.

### R E G. IV.

- 26 **S** UM pro affero regit duos Dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,  
a Est b mihi lib volupattæ.

### R E G. V.

- 27 **V** ERBUM significans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum; ut,  
Fortuna a favet b fortibus.  
b Nemini a noccas.

### R U L E II.

**M** ISEREOR, miseresco and satago, govern the Genitive; as,  
Take pity on your Countrymen.  
He hath his Hands full at home.

### R U L E III.

**E** ST taken for habeo [to have] governs the Dative of a Person; as,  
I have a Book.  
I have Books.

### R U L E IV.

**S** UM taken for affero [to bring] governs two Datives, the one of a Person, and the other of a Thing; as,  
It is [brings] a Pleasure to me,

### R U L E V.

**A** VERB signifying Advantage or Disadvantage governs the Dative; as,  
Fortune favours the Brave,  
Do Hurt to no Man.

### R E G.

Num. 23. To these last may be added Possessive Nouns, such as, *Regium*, *humanum*, *bellum*, and the like; as, *Humanum est errare*, It is incident to Man to err.

NOTE. That to all those are understood *Officium*, *opus*, *negotium*, or some other Words to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii totum effici*, You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Interest, *Cic. i. e. amicum, fautorem*, or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum*, or *habeo libros*.

So *Desum* is used elegantly for *Careo*; as, *Desunt mibi libri*, for *Careo libris*, I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE. That other Verbs, such as, *Do*, *duco*, *verto*, *tribuo*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, &c. may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur*, You are praised for this. *Ne mibi vitio veritas*, Do not blame me.

To this may be referred such Expressions as these, *Est mibi nomen Joanni*, My Name is John; which is more elegant than *Est mibi nomen Joannis* or *Joannis*.

Num. 27. This is a very general Rule, and (when we signify a Thing

R E G. VI.

**V** E R B U M activè significans regit Accusativum; t,

a *Ama b Deum.*

a *Reverero b parentes.*

\* *Recordor, memini, reminior & obliviscor regunt Accusativum vel Genitivum; ut,*

a *Recordor b lectionis vel b lectio-*

*a Obliviscor b injuria vel b in-*

*juriam.*

R U L E VI.

**A** VERB signifying active-28  
ly governs the Accusa-

tive; as,

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, remini-29  
scor and obliviscor govern the  
Accusative or Genitive; as,

I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

V E R-

be acquired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But a more particular Manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as *Commodo, proficio, placebo, consulo, neco, officio.* But *ledo* and *offendo* govern the *Accus.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, aſtentior, adſtipulor, gratulor, ignoſco, indulgo, parco, adulor, plan-do, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, ſtudeo, ſupplico, &c.* Also *Auxilior, ad-miniculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, medeo:* Also *Derogo, detraho, invideo, &c.* But *Jubeo* has the *Accus.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY or RESIST; as, *Impero, præcipio, mando; Pareo, ſervio, obedio, obſequeror, obtenebro, morem gero, morigeror, famulor: Pugno, repugno, certo, obſto, reſiutor, renitor, refiuto, adverſor, refragor, &c.* But *Jubeo* governs the *Accus.*

4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with; as, *Minor, indignor, iraſcor, ſuccenſo.*

5. To TRUST; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE and MALE; *Satisfacio, neſfacio, benedicio, maleficio, maledicio.*

7. The Compounds of the Verb SUM; as, *Adſum, proſum, obſum.*

8. Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, i, inter, ob, poſt, p̄a, ſub and ſuper;* as, 1. *Adſto, accumbo, acquiesco, affi-co, adbareo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteo, antevertio* 3. *Conſono, commiſſeo, ondono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, imniorior, inhareo, inſideo, inbit, innitor, invi-ilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, interfero.* 6. *Obrero, obtreſto, occum-eo.* 7. *poſtpono, poſthabeo.* 8. *Praeo, preſtat for excellit, preſuceo.* 9. *Suc-edo, ſubmitto, ſubjicio.* 10. *Superſto, ſupervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the Dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the Dative, for 1. Verbs of Local Motion; as, *Eo, venio, proficiſcor:* And 2. These Verbs *Provoco, ioco, invito, hortor, ſpetto, pertineo, attineo,* and ſuch like, have the Accusative with the Preposition *ad.*

Num. 28. NOTE, That Neuter and Intransitive Verbs have ſometimes an accusative after them. 1. Of their own or the like Signification; as, *'t vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire fanguinem, Olcre hircum.* 2. When in Metaphorical Sense; as, *Ardebat Alexia, i. e. Vehementer amare*

## 86 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

VERBA activa alium unde  
cum Accusativo casum re-  
gentia.

30 \* 1. VERBA accusandi,  
damnandi & absolvendi, cum  
Accusativo personæ, regunt  
etiam Genitivum criminis ;  
ut,

- a Arguit b me <sup>bb</sup> furti,
- b Metipsum <sup>bb</sup> inertiae a con-  
demno.
- b Illum <sup>bb</sup> homicidii a ab-  
solvunt.

31 2. Verba comparandi, dan-  
di, narrandi & auferendi, re-  
gunt Dativum cum Accusa-  
tivo ; ut,

Active VERBS governing  
another Case together with  
the Accusative.

1. VERBS of Accusing, Con-  
demning and Acquitting, with  
the Accusative of the Person,  
govern also the Genitive of the  
Crime ; as,

He accuses me of Theft.  
I condemn myself of Lazи-  
ness.

They acquit him of Man-  
slaughter.

2. VERBS of Comparing,  
Giving, Declaring and Taking  
away, govern the Dative with  
the Accusative ; as,

a Com-

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, ar-  
guo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insinulo, postulo, &c.*

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemnno, convinco, &c.*

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That the Genitive may be changed into the Ablative, either  
with or without a Preposition ; as, *purgo te bac culpa, or de bac culpa*, I  
clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condennavit.* He found him guilty  
of a Riot, Cic.

NOTE, 2. That the Genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some  
Ablative understood, such as, *Crimine. pena, actione, causa* ; as, *Accusa-  
re furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitisi*, i. e. *pena capitisi*.

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pena, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a  
Preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of pre-  
ferring or postponing.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of Receiving, promising, pay-  
ing, sending, bringing.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of Explaining, swearing,  
denying, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo,  
furripio, detraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, &c.*

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the Dative by Num. 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the Dative with the  
Accusative, when together with the Thing done is also signified the Person  
or Thing to, or for whom it is done ; as, *Doce mibi filium*, Teach me my  
Son ; *Cura mibi hanc rem*, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the Ablati-  
ve with *cum*.

### Part III. Chap. I. of Confusation. 87

<sup>a</sup> Comparo <sup>b</sup> Virgilium <sup>bb</sup> Homer.

I compare Virgil to Homer.

<sup>b</sup> Suum <sup>bb</sup> cuique <sup>a</sup> tribuito.

Give every Man his own. You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

<sup>a</sup> Narras <sup>b</sup> fabulam <sup>bb</sup> surdo.

<sup>a</sup> Eripuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> morti.

He rescued me from Death.

\*3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusati-  
vos, priorem personæ, posteri-  
orem rei ; ut,

3. VERBS of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing ; as,

<sup>a</sup> Posce <sup>b</sup> Deum <sup>bb</sup> veniam.

Beg Pardon of God.

<sup>a</sup> Docuit <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> Grammati-  
cam.

He taught me Grammar.

#### A N N O T A T I O.

\* Quorum activa duos Casus  
regunt, eorum passiva posteri-  
orem retinent ; ut,

The Passives of such Active 33  
Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them ; as,

<sup>a</sup> Accusor <sup>b</sup> furti.

I am accused of Theft.

Virgilius <sup>a</sup> comparatur <sup>b</sup> Homer.

Virgil is compared to Homer.

<sup>a</sup> Doceor <sup>b</sup> Grammaticam.

I am taught Grammar.

R E G. VII.

R U L E VII.

\* PRETIUM rei à quovis  
Verbo in Ablativo re-  
gitur ; ut,

T HE Price of a Thing is 34  
governed in the Abla-  
tive by any Verb ; as,

<sup>a</sup> Emi

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two Accusatives, are also reckoned these following ;

1. CELO; as, Cela banc rem uxorem, Conceal this from your Wife, Plaut. But we can say also, Celo te de hac re, and Celo tibi banc rem.

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, Induit se calceos. He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the Ablative of the Thing without a Preposition; as, Vestit se purpura, He cloaths himself with Purple. Induo and Exuo have frequently the Person in the Dative, and the Thing in the Accusative; as, Thoracem sibi induit, He put on his Breast plate.

3. MONEO; as, Id unum te moneo, I put you in Mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, Hoc, illud, id, &c.] Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio, have either the Genitive, as, Admoneo te officii, I put you in Mind of your Duty; Or the Ablative with de: as, De hac re te sepius admonui, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of Asking often change the Accusative of the Person into an Ablative with the Preposition; as, Oro, exoro, peto, postulo hoc te; I intreat this of you: Some always, as, Contendo, quaero, scitor, scissor a te. Finally, some have the Accusative of the Person, and the Ablative of the Thing with de; as, Interrogo, consulto, percontor te de hac re.

## 88 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

<p>a <i>Emi librum b duobus asfibus.</i></p> <p>a <i>Vendidit hic b auro patriam.</i></p> <p><i>Demosthenes a docuit b talento.</i></p> <p>35 * <i>Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris; ut,</i></p> <p>    b <i>Quanti a constitit?</i></p> <p>    <i>Affè &amp; b pluris.</i></p> <p>36 * <i>VERBA æstimandi regunt hujusmodi Genitivos, Magni, parvi, nihilī, &amp;c. ut,</i></p> <p>    a <i>Æstimo te b magni.</i></p>	<p>I bought a Book for two Shillings.</p> <p>This Man sold his Country for Gold.</p> <p>Demosthenes taught for a Talent.</p> <p>These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,</p> <p>How much cost it?</p> <p>A Shilling and more.</p> <p>VERBS of valuing govern such Genitives as these, Magni, parvi, nihilī, &amp;c. as,</p> <p>I value you much.</p>
	R U L E VIII.
<p>37* <b>V</b>ERBA copiæ &amp; inopiae plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,</p> <p>    a <i>Abundat b divitiis.</i></p> <p>    a <i>Caret omni b culpa.</i></p> <p>38 * <i>Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, regunt Ablativum; ut,</i></p> <p>    a <i>Utitur b fruude.</i></p> <p>    a <i>Abutitur b librī.</i></p>	<p>VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the most part govern the Ablative; as,</p> <p>He abounds in Riches.</p> <p>He has no Fault.</p> <p>Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the Ablative; as,</p> <p>He uses Deceit.</p> <p>He abuses Books.</p>

§ 2. Re-

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the Substantive be expressed, they are put in the Ablative; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of Valuing are, *Æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The rest of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, affis, truncii, hujus: Also Äqui and boni after facio and consulo.*

NOTE, 1. That we say also, *Æstimo magno, parvo, supple pretio.*

NOTE, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phedrus*, II. 5. 25.

*Multo majoris alape mecum veneunt.*

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget eris, He wants Money, Hor. Impletur veteris Bacchi, They are filled with old Wine, Virg.*

Note, That Verbs of Loading and Unloading, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus.* The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere, I will ease you of this Burden. Liberavit nos metu, He delivered us from Fear.*

Num. 38. To these Verbs add *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, com- munū*

### Part III. Chap. I. of Construction. 89

#### § 2. Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.

R E G. IX.  
VERBUM impersonale regit Dativum; ut,  
a *Expedit b reipublicæ.*  
a *Licet b nemini peccare.*  
\* EXCEP. 1. *Refert & Interest* Genitivum postulant; ut,

a *Refert b patris.*  
a *Interest b omnium.*  
\* At *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, ponuntur in Accusativo plurali; ut,  
*Non b mea a refert.*  
\* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, *Miseret, paenitet, pudet, tædet & piget* regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,  
a *Miseret b me bb tui.*  
a *Paenitet b me bb peccati.*  
a *Tædet b me bb vitae.*  
\* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

#### § 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

R U L E IX.  
A *N Impersonal Verb go-39 vernis the Dative; as,*  
It is profitable for the State.  
No Man is allowed to sin.  
EXCEP. 1. *Refert and Interest require the Genitive; as,*

*It concerns my Father.*  
*It is the Interest of all.*  
*But mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, are put in the Accusative Plural; as,*  
*I am not concerned.*  
EXC. 2. *These five, Mis-42 seret, paenitet, pudet, tædet, and piget, govern the Accusative of a Person, with the Genitive of a Thing; as,*  
*I pity you.*  
*I repent of my Sins.*  
*I am weary of my Life.*  
EXC. 3. *These four, Dec-43 cet, delectat, juvat, oportet, govern the Accusative of the Person with the Infinitive;*  
as,

M

a *Delectat*

*munico, vicitio, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, affecto, consto, preseguor, &c.*

NOTE, That *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive; as, *Potiri hostium*, To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum*, To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as these, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conductit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displaceit, vacat, restat, praefat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c.* Together with the Dative they have commonly an Infinitive after them, which is supposed to supply the Place of a Nominative before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this Genitive is frequently turned into the Infinitive; as, *Paenitet me peccasse; Tædet me vivere*; and so they fall in the following Rule.

## 90 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<sup>a</sup> Delectat <sup>b</sup> me <sup>bb</sup> studere. I delight to study.

Non <sup>a</sup> decet <sup>b</sup> te <sup>bb</sup> rixari. It does not become you to scold.

§ 3. REGIMENT Infinitivi,  
Participiorum, Gerundiorum  
& Supinorum.

R E G. X.

44 **U**NUM Verbum regit  
aliud in Infinitivo; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Cupio <sup>b</sup> discere.

R E G. XI.

45 **P**ARTICIPIA, Gerundia  
& Supina regunt Casum  
fusorum verborum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Amans <sup>b</sup> virtutem.  
<sup>a</sup> Carens <sup>b</sup> fraude.

I. GERUNDIA.

46 1. **G**ERUNDIUM in  
DUM Nominativi  
Casus cum verbo [est] regit  
Dativum; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Vivendum est <sup>b</sup> mihi recte.  
<sup>a</sup> Moriendum est <sup>b</sup> omnibus.

47 2. Gerundium in DI re-  
gitur à Substantivis vel Ad-  
jectivis; ut,  
<sup>a</sup> Tempus <sup>b</sup> legendi.  
<sup>a</sup> Cupidus <sup>b</sup> discendi.

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT  
of the Infinitive, Participles,  
Gerunds and Supines.

R U L E X.

**O**NE Verb governs another  
in the Infinitive; as,  
I desire to learn.

R U L E XI.

**P**ARTICIPLES, Gerunds  
and Supines govern the  
Case of their own Verbs; as,  
Loving Virtue.  
Wanting Guile.

I. GERUNDIUM.

1. **T**HE Gerund in DUM  
of the Nominative  
Case with the Verb [est] go-  
vers the Dative; as,  
I must live well.  
All must die.

2. The Gerund in DI is go-  
verned by Substantives or Ad-  
jectives; as,  
Time of reading.  
Desirous to learn.

3. Ge-

Num. 43. NOTE, That Oportet is elegantly joined with the Subjunctive Mood; UT being understood; as, Oportet facias. [You must do it] for O-  
portet te facere.

Attinet, Pertinet and Spectat, when used impersonally, (which rarely happens) have the Accusative with ad, as was observed above, p. 85.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by Adjectives; as, Cupidus & cu-  
piens discere.

NOTE, That the Verb Capit or caperunt is sometimes understood; as, Omnes mibi invidere; supple caperunt. They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This Dative is frequently understood; as, Eundum est, (supple nobis) We must go.

NOTE, That this Gerund always imports Necessity, and the Dative after it is the Person on whom the Necessity lies.

Num. 47. The Substantives are such as these, Amor, causa, gratia, fa-  
num, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupidus, &c.

2. The Adjectives are generally Verbal, mentioned Num. 14.

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi  
Casus regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,

*Charta a utilis b scribendo.*

4. Gerundium in DUM Accusativi Casus regitur à Præpositionibus ad vel inter; ut,

*Promptus a ad b audiendum.*

*Attentus a inter b docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casus regitur a Præpositionibus, a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in; ut,

*Pæna a a b peccando absterret.*

\* Vel sine Præpositione, ut  
Ablativus Modi vel Causæ; ut,

*Memoria b excolendo a augetur.*

a *Defessus sum b ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum suis Substantivis in Genere, Numero & Casu concordant; ut,

*Petendum est pacem.*

*Tempus petendi pacem.*

3. The Gerund in DO of 48  
the Dative Case is governed by Adjectives signifying Usefulness or Fitness; as,  
Paper useful for writing.

4. The Gerund in DUM of 49  
the Accusative Case is governed by the Prepositions ad or inter; as,

Ready to hear.

Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. The Gerund in DO of 50  
the Ablative Case is governed by the Prepositions, a, ab, de, e; ex, or in; as,  
Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a Preposition, as the Ablative of Manner or Cause; as,

The Memory is improved by exercising it.

I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the 52  
Accusative are elegantly turned into the Participles in DUS, which agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number and Case; as,

*Petenda est pax.*

*Tempus petendæ pacis.*

M 2

Ad

Num. 48. The Adjective of Fitness is often understood; as, *Non est solvendo*; He is not able to pay, [supple *aptus* or *par.*]

NOTE, That sometimes this Gerund is governed by a Verb; as, *Epidicūm querendo operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plaut.

Num. 49. NOTE, 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the Preposition ob and ante, as, *Ob absolvendum munus*, For finishing your Task, Cic. *Ante domandum*, Before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of Horses.

NOTE, 2. That what was the Gerund in Dum of the Nominative, the Verb est, fuit, &c. becomes the Accusative with esse; as, *Omnis orientum esse novimus*, We know all must die,

## 92 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

*Ad petendum pacem.*

*A petendo pacem.*

S U P I N A.

53\* 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum motū; ut,  
a *Abiit b deambulatum.*

54\* 2. Supinum in U ponitur post nomen adjectivum; ut,  
a *Facile b dictu.*

*Ad petendam pacem.*

*A petenda pace.*

S U P I N E S.

1. *The Supine in UM is after a Verb of Motion; as*  
*He hath gone to walk.*

2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; a.*  
*Easy to tell, or to be t*

§ 4. 1

Num. 52. Add to these the *Gerunds of Fungor, fruor and potior.*

These Particles in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the Substantive must always be of the same Case that *Gerund* was of.

NOTE 2. That because of its noisy Sound, the *Gerund* in *di* is often changed into the *Genitive Plural*; but either the *Accusative* is retained as *Studio patres vestros videndi*, rather than *Patrum vestrorum videndorum* or it is turned into the *Genitive Plural*, without changing the *Gerund*, as, *patrum vestrorum videndi studio*. Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius*; but my Gram. maj. vol. 2. p. 276.

Num. 53. The *Supine* in *UM* is elegantly used with the Verb *Eo* where we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a Thing; as, *In vita tu laudem is questum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation by the Hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reason why this *Supine* is taken impersonally, supplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infinitive*.

Some general Remarks on the Construction of Particles, Gerunds and Supines.

NOTE, 1. That Particles, *Gerunds* and *Supines* have a twofold Structure; one as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they bear a certain Case after them; another as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and consequently are subject to the same Rules with them; To

1. A Particle is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subj.* by Num.

2. A *Gerund* is a *Substantive* and construed as follows; (1.) That in *of* the *Nominative* by Num. 2. Of the *Accus.* by Num. 68. (2.) That in *do* by Num. 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by Num. 16. of the *Lat.* by Num. 69. 71. or 55.

3. A *Supine* is also a *Substantive*, (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* understood, by Num. 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* understood, by Num.

NOTE, 2. That the Present of the *Infinitive Active*, the first *Supine* the *Gerund* in *dum* with the Preposition *ad*, are thus distinguished: The *Supine* is used after *Verbs of Motion*; The *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs*. The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective Nouns*. But these last are *occasionally* to be met with after *Verbs of Motion*; and Poets use also the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives*.

NOTE, 3. That the Present of the *Infinitive Passive* and the last *Supine* distinguished: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; *ie Infinitive* hath not, unless (as I said) among Poets.

§ 4. *Construētio CIRGUM-STANTIARUM.*

I. *Causa, Modus & Instrumentum.*

R E G. XII.

\* **C**AUSA, Modus & In- strumentum ponuntur in Ablativo ; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Palleo b metu.*

<sup>a</sup> *Fecit suo b more.*

<sup>a</sup> *Scribo b calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

R E G. XIII.

\* **N**O M E N oppidi- ponitur in Ge-

§ 2. The Construction of Circumstances (a).

I. The Cause, Manner, and Instrument.

R U L E XII.

**T**HE Causē Manner ands 5  
Instrument are put in  
the Ablative ; as,  
I am pale for Fear.  
He did it after his own Way.  
I write with a Pen.

2. Place.

R U L E XIII.

**T**HE Name of a Town<sup>56</sup>  
is put in the Genitive,  
nitive,

(a) Adjective Nouns, but especially Verbs, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these five. 1. The Cause or Reason why any Thing is done. 2. The Way or Manner how it is done. 3. The Instrument or Thing wherewith it is done. 4. The Place where. And 5. The Time when it is done.

Num. 55. Note, 1. That the Cause is known by the Question CUR or QUARE? Why? Wherfore? &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? How? And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUOCUM Wherewith?

Note, 2. That the Preposition is frequently express with the Cause and Manner ; as, *Pro gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Disgrace. But the Preposition [CUM] is never added to the Instrument : For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo*; *Cum oculis vidi*.

Note, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the Instrument, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or *Ablative of Concomitancy*, i. e. signifying that something was in Company with another; for then the Preposition [CUM] is generally express; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, i. e. Having a Sword with him or about him.

Note, 4. That to Cause some refer the Matter of which any Thing is made ; as, *Glypus esse fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass; But (except with the Poets) the Preposition is for the most part express.

Note, 5. That to Manner some refer the Adjunct, i. e. something joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amena floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

Note, 6. That to Instrument some refer *Conficior dolore inedia*, &c. *Profectio, amore, &c.* *Afficio te honore, contumelia, &c.* *Laces a verbū asperis*,

## 94 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>nitivo, cum quæstio sit per UBI ; ut,<br/>     a Vixit b Romæ,<br/>     a Mortuus est b Londini.</p> <p>57 * EXCEP. Si verò sit ter-<br/>     tiæ Declinationis, aut Plura-<br/>     lis numeri, in Ablativo effer-<br/>     tur ; ut,<br/>     a Habitat b Carthagine.<br/>     a Studuit b Parisiis.</p> <p>58 * 2. Cùm quæstio sit per<br/>     QUO, nomen oppidi in Ac-<br/>     cusativo regitur ; ut,<br/>     a Venit b Edinburgum.<br/>     a Profectus est b Athenas.</p> <p>59 * 3. Si queratur per UN-<br/>     DE vel QUA, nomen oppidi<br/>     ponitur in Ablativo ; ut,<br/>     a Discéssit b Aberdona.<br/>     b Laodicea iter a faciebat.</p> <p>60 * 4. Domus &amp; Rus eodem<br/>     modo quo oppidorum nomi-<br/>     na construuntur ; ut,<br/>     Manet domi, He stays at home. Domum revertitur,<br/>     turns home. Domo arcessitus sum, I am called from<br/>     Vivit rure or ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.</p> <p>61 5. Nominibus regionum,<br/>     provinciarum, &amp; aliorum lo-<br/>     corum, non dictis, Præpositio<br/>     ferè additur ; ut,<br/>     UBI ? Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe, &amp;c.<br/>     QUO ? Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in [vel ad] urban<br/>     UNDE ? Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex Urbe, &amp;c.<br/>     QUA ? Transit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem, &amp;c</p> | <p>when the Question is m.<br/>     UBI, [Where] as,<br/>     He lived at Rome.<br/>     He died at London.</p> <p>EXCEP. But if it is<br/>     third Declension, or of th.<br/>     eral Number, it is express.<br/>     Ablative ; as,<br/>     He dwells at Carthage.<br/>     He studied at Paris.</p> <p>2. When the Question i<br/>     by QUO, [Whither] the<br/>     of a Town is governed<br/>     Accusative ; as,<br/>     He came to Edinburgh<br/>     He went to Athens.</p> <p>3. If the Question is n<br/>     UNDE, [Whence] or<br/>     [by, or through what<br/>     the Name of a Town is<br/>     the Ablative ; as,<br/>     He went from Aberd<br/>     He went through Lac<br/>     4. Domus and Rus a<br/>     strued the same Way as<br/>     of Towns ; as,</p> <p>5. To Names of Cou<br/>     Provinces, and other Plat<br/>     mentioned, the Preposition<br/>     nerally added ; as,</p> |
|---|--|

A N

---

**NOTE.** 56, &c. Note, 1. That the Preposition is frequent.  
 f Towns, (especially when the Question is Quo? Unde  
 taines omitted to Names of Countries, Provinces, &c.

## A N N O T A T I O.

\* Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

*Glascua* <sup>a</sup> *distant Edinburgo*  
*triginta* <sup>b</sup> *millia passuum;*

*Iter vel* <sup>b</sup> *itinere unius diei.*

*The Distance of one Place* <sup>a</sup> *from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,*

*Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh; One Day's Journey.*

## 3. Tempus.

## R E G. XIV.

\* 1. **T**EMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cum quæstio sit per QUANDO; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Venit* <sup>b</sup> *hora tertia.*

\* 2. Cum quæstio sit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo; sed saepius Accusativo; ut,

<sup>a</sup> *Mansit paucos* <sup>b</sup> *dies.*

*Sex* <sup>b</sup> *mensibus* <sup>a</sup> *absuit.*

## 3. Time.

## R U L E XIV.

**T**IME is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO, [When;] as,

He came at three o'Clock.

2. When the Question is made by QUAMDIU, [How long] Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but often in the Accusative; as,

He staid a few Days.

He was away six Months.

De

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militie* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militieque una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, or in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War, *Sallust.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a Town is put in the Genitive, *urbis* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbis nobili.*

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus express'd,

The Name of { IN or AT  
TO or UNTO } is put { Gen. or Abl. +  
a Town after { FROM or THROUGH } in the { Accusative.  
Ablative.

+ i. e. When it is of the third Declension, or of the Plural Number. But when AT signifies about or near a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gererat*, Virg.

*Num. 63 and 64.* These two Rules may be thus express'd;

1. Nouns that denote a precise TERM of TIME are put in the Accusative or Ablative.

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of Time are put in the Accusative or Ablative.

## 96 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

*De Ablativo absoluto.*

R E G. XV.

65\* **S**UBSTANTIVUM

cum Participio, quo-  
rum Casus a nulla alia dicti-  
one pendet, ponuntur in Ab-  
lativo absoluto ; ut,

a Sole b oriente fugiunt te-  
nebrae.

a Operc b peracto ludemus.

Of the Ablative absolut

R U L E XV.

**A** SUBSTANTIVE

a Participle, whose  
depends upon no other Word  
put in the Ablative abso-  
lutus,

The Sun rising [or whi-  
Sun riseth] Darknes  
away.

Our Work being finish  
when our Work is  
ed] we will play.

III. Constructio Vocabum In-  
declinabilium.

I. Adverbiorum.

66\* I. **A**DVERBIA quæ-  
dam temporis,

III. *The Construction of  
Indeclinable.*

I. Adverbs.

I. **S**OME Adve-  
Time, Pla

*Num. 65. Note, 1.* This *Ablative* is called **ABSOLUTE** or *Inde-*, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a *Word* before it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nom*; then the Rule does not take Place.

*Note, 2.* That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the *Signs* of this *Ablative*.

*Note, 3.* That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) *Participle perfect* is englisch'd by **HAVING**, we are carefully to whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Passive*, we are to change to **BEING**, its true *English*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no Change. **HAVING** is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will be the following Example.

James having said these Things, { **Jacobus** *hic locutus abiit.* D  
departed.

James, these Things being said, { **Jacobus** *his dictis abiit.* Paff  
departed.

Having promised a great Reward. { **Pollicitus** *magnam mercedem.* I  
A great Reward being promised. { **Magnâ mercede** *promissa.* I

*Note, 4.* That when there is no *Participle* express in Latin, *existing* is understood; as, *Me puer*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, being King. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

*Note, 5.* That the *Participle* may be resolved into *Dum*, *cu*, *postquam*, &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the *V* *a English or Latin.*

### *art. III. Chap. I. of Construction.* 97

Quantitatis regunt Genera;  
; ut,  
idie illius <sup>b</sup> diei.  
ique <sup>b</sup> gentium.  
is est <sup>b</sup> verborum.

Quædam Adverbia de-  
regunt Casum primiti-  
ut,  
nium <sup>a</sup> elegantissimè lo-  
tur.  
e <sup>a</sup> convenienter <sup>b</sup> na-  
re.

i. *Præpositionum.*  
RÆPOSITIONES  
*Ad, apud, ante, &c.*  
ivum regunt; ut,  
<sup>b</sup> patrem.  
ræpositiones *A, ab, abs,*  
gunt Ablativum; ut,  
<sup>b</sup> patre.

ræpositiones *In, sub, su-  
bter,* regunt Accusati-  
m motus ad locum si-  
ir; ut,  
in <sup>b</sup> scholam.  
; <sup>b</sup> mænia tendit, Virg.  
it <sup>a</sup> super <sup>b</sup> agmina, Id.  
t <sup>a</sup> subter <sup>b</sup> fastigia te-  
, Id.

: si motus vel quies in  
nificetur, *In & sub re-*  
*lativum; Super & sub-*  
*Accusativum vel Abla-*  
*ut,*  
*Vel discurro <sup>a</sup> in <sup>b</sup> scho-*

*lo vel ambulo <sup>a</sup> sub <sup>b</sup> bra.*  
*super <sup>b</sup> arma, Virg.*  
*de <sup>a</sup> super viridi, Id.*

*Quantity governs the Geni-  
tive; as,*  
*The Day before that Day.*  
*Every where.*  
*There's enough of Words.*

2. *Some Derivative Ad-67*  
*verbs govern the Case of their*  
*Primitives; as,*  
*He speaks the most ele-  
gantly of all.*  
*To live agreeably to Na-  
ture.*

2. *Of Prepositions.*  
i. **T**HE Prepositions *Ad, 68*  
*apud, ante, &c. go-*  
*vern the Accusative; as,*  
*To the Father.*

2. *The Prepositions A, ab, 69*  
*abs, &c. govern the Abla-*  
*tive; as,*  
*From the Father.*

3. *The Prepositions In, sub, 70*  
*super and subter, govern the*  
*Accusative when Motion to*  
*a Place is signified; as,*  
*I go into the School.*  
*He goes under the Walls.*  
*It fell upon the Troops.*  
*He brings [him] under the*  
*Roof of the House.*

¶ *But if Motion or Rest in*  
*a Place be signified, In and*  
*sub govern the Ablative; Su-*  
*per and subter either the Ac-*  
*cusative or Ablative; as,*  
*I sit or run up and down*  
*in the School.*  
*I ly or walk under the*  
*Shadow.*  
*Sitting above the Arms.*  
*Upon the green Gras.*

## 98 . Rudiments of the Latin Tongue,

<i>Vene <sup>a</sup> subter <sup>b</sup> cutem disper-</i>	The Veins dispersed under the Skin.
<i>s.e., Plin.</i>	
<i>Subter <sup>b</sup> littore, Catull.</i>	Beneath the Shore.
<i>72 4. ¶ Præpositio in compo-</i>	<i>4. ¶ A Preposition oftentimes</i>
<i>sitione eundem sæpe casum re-</i>	<i>governs the same Case in Com-</i>
<i>git quem extra ; ut.</i>	<i>position that it does without</i>
<i>Adeamus <sup>b</sup> scholam.</i>	<i>it ; as,</i>
<i>Exeamus <sup>b</sup> schola.</i>	<i>Let us go to the School.</i>
	<i>Let us go out of the School.</i>
	<i>3. Inter-</i>

### ¶ The Prepositions, with the Cases they govern, are contained in these Verses :

1. Hæ quartum adsciscunt casum sibi præposituræ;  
*Id, penes, adversum, cis, citra, adversus, & extra,*  
*Ultra, post, preter, juxta, per, pone, secundum,*  
*Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, super, propter, & intra,*  
*Quis addas contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.*
2. Hæ sextum poscent ; *A, cum, tenuis, abs, ab, & absque,*  
*Atque palam, pro, pre, clam, de, e, ex, sine, coram.*
3. *Sub, super, in, subter, quartum sextumque requirunt.*

NOTE, 1. That *Versus* and *Usque* are put after their Cases ; as, *Rolian versus*, Towards Italy ; *Oceanum usque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already observed, *Page 67.*) these are properly *Adverbs*, the *Preposition AD* being understood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is also put after its Case ; as, *Mento tenus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, i. When the Word wants the *Singular* ; as, *Camarum tenus*, As far as [the Town] *Cuma*.

2. When we speak of Things of which we have naturally but two ; as, *Crurum tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Consonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Cognovants* ; *Ab* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in English IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*, INTO of the *Accusative*.

NOTE, 7. IN for *erga, contra, per, supra, ad, &c.* governs the *Accus.* as, *Amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi ? Crecit in dies singulos*. *Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Pisces in cœnam empti*. But IN for *inter* governs the *Ablative* ; as, *In amicis habere*, Sallust.

SUB for *circus* governs the *Accusat.* as, *Sub cœnam*.

SUPER for *ultra, præter* and *inter*, governs the *Accusat.* as, *Super Garamantias*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. *In sermone super cœnam nati*, Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super bac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the *Preposition* may be dissolved from the Verb, and put before the Case by itself as, *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*. And even then the *Preposition* is frequently repeated ; as, *Exire e finibus suis*, *Cæs.*

## 3. Interjectionum.

\* I. **I**NTERJECTIONES  
*O, heu, & prob, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum ; ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *O formose b puer.*

<sup>a</sup> *Heu b me miserum !*

\* 2. *Hei & Væ regunt Dativum ; ut,*

<sup>a</sup> *Hei b mihi !*

<sup>a</sup> *Væ b nobis.*

## 4. Conjunctionum.

\* I. **C**ONJUNCTIONES  
*Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, & quædam aliæ, connectunt similes Casus & Modos ; ut,*

*Honora b patrem a & b matrem.*

*Nec b scribit, a nec b legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam & dummodo Subjunctivo Moodo ferè semper adhærent ; ut,*

*Lego a ut b discam.*

<sup>a</sup> *Utinam b superes.*

## 3. Of Interjections.

I. **T**HE Interjections O, 73  
*Heu and Proh, govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative ; as,*

*O fair Boy.*

*Ah Wretch that I am !*

2. *Hei and Væ govern the Dative ; as,*

*Ah me !*

*Wæ to you.*

## 4. Of Conjunctions.

I. **T**HE Conjunctions Et, 75  
*ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, and some others, couple like Cases and Moods ; as,*

*Honour your Father and Mother.*

*He neither writes nor reads.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam and dummodo are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood ; as,*

*I read that I may learn.*

*I wish you were wife.*

N 2      SYN-

*Num. 75.* To these add *Quam, nisi, preterquam, an, and Adverbs of Likeness.* The Reason of this Construction is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is express to one of them and understood to the other.

*Numb. 76.* To these add all indefinite Words, that is, *Interrogatives, whether Noun, Pronouns, Adverbs or Conjunctions, when taken in a doubtful or indefinite Sense ; such as, Quis, uter, quantus, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne, &c.* (See Page 65 and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites*, when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito, and the like ; as, Ubi est frater tuus ? Nescio ubi fit. An venturus est ? Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE the Adverb of Forbidding requires the Imperative or Subjunctive, as, *No time, or ne timeas.* See Page 47.

*Dum, quam, quod, si, sin, ni, nisi, et si, etiam si, priusquam, simulac, videm, quandoquidem, &c.* are joined sometimes with the Indicative, sometimes with the Subjunctive.

# S Y N T A X E O S *Syntaxis.*

Sive,

*Genuinæ & maximè necessaria Constructionis Regula, ad quas ceteræ omnes reducuntur.*

## A X I O M A Y A.

I. **O**MNIS Oratio constat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum Verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne Verbū finitū habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne Adjectivū habet suum Substantivū expressum vel suppressum.

## Sex Casuum Constructionis.

I. **O**MNE Verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso, in Numero & Persona; ut,

*Puer legit.*

*[Homines] aiunt.*

*Romani [cooperunt] festinare.*

## A Summary S Y N T A

Or,

The true and most necessary Rules of Construction which all the rest are deduced.

## First PRINCIPAL

I. **E**VERY Speech [*cōtēnētē*] consists Noun and a Verb.

II. Every Nominative has its own Verb express or understood.

III. Every finite Verb has its own Nominative or understood.

IV. Every Adjective has its own Substantive expressed or understood.

## The Construction of the Cases.

I. **E**VERY Verb of the finite Mood expressed or understood agrees with its Nominative express or understood in Number and Person; a

*The Boy reads.*

*They say.*

*The Romans made war.*

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Substantivo expresso vel suppresso ; ut,

*Liber fratri.*

*Est [officium] patris.*

III. Dativus Acquisitionis, [*i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel admittitur*] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expresso vel suppresso jungitur ; ut,

*Dedi Petro.*

*Qui dedisti ?*

[*Dedi*] *Petro.*

*Utilis bello.*

*Non est [aptus] solvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accusativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel + Präpositione expressis vel suppressis ; ut,

*Amo Deum ;*

*& [amo] parentes.*

*Ad patrem.*

*Abiit [ad] Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expressus vel suppressus ; ut,

*Dicit se scribere.*

*Licet mihi [me] esse bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocabutus absolutè ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione *O* ; ut,

*O Dav.*

*Heus Syre.*

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à + Präpositione expressa vel suppressa ; ut,

*A puer.*

*Exultat [præ] gaudio.*

II. Every Genitive is governed by a Substantive express or understood ; as,

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. The Dative of Acquisition [*i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken*] is joined to any Noun or Verb express or understood ; as,

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it ?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. Every Accusative is governed by an Active Verb, or a + Preposition express or understood ; as,

I love God ;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ Or is put before the Infinitive express or understood ; as,

He says that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. Every Vocative is placed absolutely, the Interjection O being sometimes added ; as,

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. Every Ablative is governed by a + Preposition express or understood ; as,

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

## APPEN-

+ See Page 67, and Larger Syntax, Page 97 and 98.

## A P P E N D I X.

I. <b>O</b> MNE Adjectivum con- cordat cum Substan- tivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero, & Casu ; ut, <i>Bonus vir.</i> <i>Triste [negotium.]</i>	I. <b>E</b> VERY Adjective ag- with a Substantive prest or understood, in Gen- Number, and Case ; as, A good Man. A sad Thing.
II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem convenient in Ca- su ; ut, <i>Dominus Deus.</i>	II. Substantives signif- the same Thing agree in Ca- se, as, The Lord God.
III. Omnis Infinitivus regi- tur à Verbo vel Nomine expre- sis vel suppressis ; ut, <i>Cupio discere.</i> <i>Dignus amari.</i> <i>Populus [cœpit] mirari.</i>	III. Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun prest or understood ; as, I desire to learn. Worthy to be loved. The People wondered.

## E X P L A N A T I O N.

**A**LL Construction is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Gramarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE Construction is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT Construction entirely depends upon Causa, which either for Elegance or Dispatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few Fundamental Rules, and more fully branched out in the Larger Syntax. The other is also interspersed in the Larger Syntax, but distinguished from that which is True by an Aste.

The Cases mentioned in the Rules of the Larger Syntax immediately cover the Rules of this Summary to which they respectively belong ; those that are True without any Ellipsis ; those that are Figurative by having their Ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13. supple negotium. Numb. 14. 47. sup. de causa, gratia, or in re, negotio. Numb. 15. sup. è numero. Numb. 21. sup. de negotio. Numb. 22 and 23. sup. officium, negotium, &c. Numb. 24. sup. 1. sat, taken from the Verb. 2. de causa, &c. Numb. 29. memoriam, notitiam, verba, &c. Numb. 30. sup. de criminis, poena, Numb. 35. and 36. sup. pro re, or pretio avis. Numb. 40. sup. inter gosia, and res [fieri] se ad negotia. Numb. 42. sup. res, negotium, &c. Numb. 56. sup. in urbe. Numb. 60. Domi, sup. in eisdem. Numb. 66. these seem to be taken for Substantive Nouns.

RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73. sup. malum est ; or those used as Substantives.

## Part III. Chap. II. of Resolution. 103

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53 and 62. sup. ad. Numb. 33. sup. quod ad. Numb. 41. i. e. *Est inter mea negotia; Refert [or res fert] se ad mea negotia, &c.* Numb. 58. sup. ad or in, Numb. 64. sup. per. Numb. 73. sup. *sentio, lugeo, &c.*

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12. sup. *e, ex, or cum.* Numb. 19. sup. *pre.* Numb. 20. sup. *de, e, ex, cum, &c.* Numb. 21. sup. *a, ab, &c.*

Numb. 34. sup. *pro.* Numb. 37, 38. sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex.* Numb. 51 and 55. sup. *pre, cum, a, ab, e, ex, &c.* Numb. 54. sup. *in or de.* Numb. 57. sup. *in.* Numb. 59. sup. *a, ab, e, ex.* Numb. 62. sup. *in.* Numb. 64. sup. *in or pro.* Numb. 65. sup. *sub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds and Supines*, because the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this, a learned Grammarians ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Participle *existens* is understood; as, *Utilis [existens] bello. Pollio præsidium [existens] reis. Dignus [existens] amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no Part of a Sentence, but the Case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative TU or VOS* is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already express in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Iacobē lege, i. e. O tu Iacobē, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the *Interjection O.* See *Vossius, Lib. VII. Cap. 69.* and *Sanctius, Lib. IV. de Ellipsis Verb. Audio & Narro.*

## C H A P. II.

### Of Exposition or Resolution.

**E**XPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a *Sentence*, and placing all the Parts of it, whether express or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

1. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound*.

1. A SIMPLE Sentence is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND Sentence is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it joined together by some *Couples*.

These COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The *Relative QUI.* 2. Some *Comparative Words*, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quam, &c.* 3. *Indefinite Words*, [See Page 70 and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a Simple Sentence there are two Things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential*. 2. Its *Accidental Parts*.

1. The Essential Parts of a Sentence are a *Nominative* and a *Verb*.

2. The Accidental Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles*; as, *O, en, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a Sentence, or to shew its Dependence upon what was said before; as, *Jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or and these are *Substantive Nouns*, 4. Such as qualify and explain them

THE LATE MR. LONGUE,  
PRESIDENTIA PART THIR  
TENTH AND OF Sentences  
Speech.

**S**ENTENCE 1      *The girl of the Mill  
was a good girl or were Nor  
thern girls You read  
the Books; You read  
poetry You read good  
books.*

# C H A P. I

## The Author's Character, or Opinion.

**S**IXTY-FIVE years right  
and wrong have it Spee  
in his life, he has two, Co  
the Government.

Part of Grammar; if  
you can get others, it  
will be better, and you know what Ct  
means, and apply them to Practice  
and see what they are intended.  
It is not absolutely necessary  
to learn all the rules according to the  
books, as we speak. II.  
The first thing to do is to be able to ex-  
plain what is written when it is made  
up. CONSTRUCTION, an  
example. The first sentence  
is to be learned how to u-  
se it, and so on. It is  
not necessary that there is  
any such a number of the

the State and Government  
no change be made in the  
State and Government, the first  
and second sections of the bill  
being rejected.

*ti*

## 104 Rudiments of the Latin Tongue.

*Adjectives, Adverbs and Prepositions*, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a compound Sentence supplies the Place of those two last kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL Order is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

ARTIFICIAL Order is when Words are so ranged as to render them most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A Sentence may be resolved from the Artificial into the Natural Order by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting* and *Introductory* Words where they are found,

2. The *NOMINATIVE*.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, i. e. Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another successively (till you come to the Verb) where they are found.

4. The *VERB*.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, &c. where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

### E X A M P L E.

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mibi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque latabere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewel then my [Son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This Compound Sentence is resolved into these five Simple Sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [tu] vale,* 2. *& [tu] persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum [filium] mibi;* 3. *sed [tu persuade tibi te] fore cariorem [filium mithi in] multo [negotio]* 4. *si [tu] latabere talibus monumentis,* 5. *& [tu latabere talibus] praeceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words stand always first in a Sentence, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is used in Compound Sentences.

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a Compound Sentence are separated from one another by these Marks called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. These that are smaller, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are greater, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Codon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis* marked thus ( ).

But when the Sentence, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a Question is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden Passion is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

# Morum & Pietatis PRÆCEPTA,

V I Z.

- I. *Dicta septem sapientum è Græcis.*
- II. *Gulielmi Lili Monita pædagogica.*
- III. *Dion. Catonis Disticha moralia.*
- IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani de moribus & civilitate Puerorum Carmen.*
- V. *Rudimenta Pietatis, sive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apostolicum & Decalogus; item duorum Sacramentorum, Baptismi & Sacrae Cenæ Domini, Institutiones.*

Quibus accessit

Summula CATECHISMI ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis;

I T E M,

Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

---

*Timor Domini initium sapientiae est, Prov. i. 7.*

*Pietas ad omnia utilis est, promissiones habens & praesentis & futurae vitae, I. Tim. iv. 8.*

---

E D I N B U R G I,  
Ipud T. & W. RUDDIMANNOS, Anno Dom.



## *Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis, D. Erasmo Roterod. Interprete.*

*Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hic, mente reconde :  
Hinc poteris magna commoditate frui.*

### *Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.*

O	MNIBUS placeto.	Mortalia cogita.
	Bona res quies.	Ne prior injuriam facias.
	Periculosa temeritas.	Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Semper	voluptates sunt mortales :	Probrum fugito.
	Honores autem immortales.	Responde in tempore.
Amicis	adversa fortuna utentibus idem esto.	Ea facito quorum te non possit pœnitere.
	Lucrum turpe, res pessima.	Ne cui invideas.
	Quicquid promiseris facito.	Oculis moderare.
Infortunium	tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.	Quod justum est imitare.
	Veritati adhæreto.	Bene meritos honora.
	Age quæ justa sunt.	Spem fove.
	Violentiam oderis.	Calumniam oderis.
	Principibus cede.	Affabilis esto.
	Voluptati tempera.	Cùm errâris, muta consilium.
A jurejurando	abstine.	Concordiam sectare.
	Pietatem sectare.	Diuturnam amicitiam custodi.
	Laudato honesta,	Magistratus metue.
	A vitiis abstine.	Omnibus teipsum præbe.
	Beneficium repende.	Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
	Supplicibus misericors esto.	Ne tempori credideris.
	Liberos instrue.	Teipsum ne negligas.
	Sapientum utere consuetudine.	Seniorem reverere.
	Litem oderis.	Mortem oppete pro patria.
	<i>Bonos in pretio habeto.</i>	Ne quavis de re doleas.
	<i>Arcatum cela.</i>	Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
	<i>Cede magnis.</i>	Sperato tanquam mortalis.
	<i>'unitatem exspectato.</i>	Parcito tanquam immortalis.
		Ne efferas gloria.
		Largire cum utilitate.

## Dicta SAPIENTUM.

3

Amicis utere.

Mortuum ne irrideto.

Dilige amicos.

Consule inculpatè.

## Dicta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

<b>I</b> N speculo teipsum contem-	Quid sit autem ausculta.
plare, & si formosus appa-	Priùs autem intellige; & de-
rebis, age quæ deceant for-	inde ad opus accede.
mam: sin deformis, quod in	Ne ob divitias laudáris virum
facie minus est, vel deest, id	indignum.
morum pensato pulchritudi-	Perfusione cape, non vi.
ne.	Compara in adolescentia qui-
Auditio multa.	dem modestiam, in sene-
Loquere pauca.	ctute verò prudentiam.
De Numine ne malè loquaris.	

## Dicta PITTA CI MITYLENÆI.

<b>Q</b> UAE facturus es, ea ne di-	Infortunatum ne irriferis.
xeris; frustatus enim ri-	Auditio libenter.
deberis.	Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Depositum redde.	Ne festines loqui.
Desidiosus ne esto.	Nosce teipsum.
A familiaribus in minutis re-	Legibus pare.
bus lœsus, feras.	Voluptatem coérce,
Amico ne maledixeris.	Ne quid nimis.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.	Inimicitiam solve.
Uxori dominare [Christianè.]	Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem	Parentes reverere.
à liberis exspecta.	Quæ fieri non possunt, cave
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.	concupiscas.
Ne contendere cum parentibus,	Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus;
etiam si justa dixeris.	ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris,
Ne geras imperium, priusquam	dominos tibi pares, non af-
parere didiceris.	fines.

## Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

<b>N</b> E sis unquam elatus.	Suspicionem abjicito.
Domus curam age.	Parentes patientia vince.
Libros evolve.	Beneficii accepti memento.
Justè judicato.	Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Bonis benefacito.	Aliena ne concupiscas.
<i>Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.</i>	<i>Ne teipsum præcipites in illi</i>
<i>maledicentia temperato.</i>	<i>crimen.</i>

*GVL. LILII Carmen*

Res amici diligas, ac perinde Citiū ad infortunatos amicos  
serves ut tuas. [num. quām ad fortunatos proficitur]  
Lapis auri index, aurum hominē cere.  
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris. Mendax calumniā vitam cor-  
Voto nihil pretiosius. rumpit.  
Ne cui miniteris; est enim mu- Mendaces odit quisque prudi-  
liebre. dens & sapiens.

*Dīcta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.*

<b>N</b> osce te ipsum.	Sapientiā utere,
Ne cui invideas mortalia.	Multitudini place.
Temperantiam exerce.	Oderis calumnias.
Turpia fuge.	Ne quid suspiceris.
Tempori parce.	Moribus probatis esto.
Justè rem para.	Ne fueris onerosus.

*Dīcta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.*

<b>D</b> eum cole.	Legibus pareto.
Parentes reverere.	Cogita quod justum est.
Amicis succurre.	Iracundiae moderare.
Veritatem sustineto.	Virtutem laudato.
Ne jurato.	Malos odio prosequitor.

*Dīcta THALETIS MILESII.*

<b>P</b> rincipem honora.	Gloriam sectare.
Amicos probato.	Vitæ curam age.
Similis tui sis.	Pacem dilige.
Nemini promittito.	Laudatus esto apud omnes.
Quod adest boni consulito.	Susurrarem ex ædibus ejice.
A vitiis abstinento.	

*GULIELMI LILII Monita paedagogica ; si-  
ve Carmen de Moribus ad suos Discipulos.*

**Q**UI mihi discipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,  
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dīcta tuo.  
Mane citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum ;  
Templa petas supplex, & venerare Deum.  
Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque ;  
Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.  
Desidiam fugiens, cum te schola nostra vocarit,  
Adfis ; nulla pigræ sit tibi causa more.

## *De Moribus.*

Me Præceptorem cùm videris ore saluta,  
Et condiscipulos ordine quoque tuos.  
Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te iedisse jubemus :  
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.  
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,  
Hoc magis is clara sede locandus erit.  
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,  
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.  
Si quid dictabo, scribes ; at singula rectè :  
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.  
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carinina chartis  
Mandes, quæ libris inservuisse decet.  
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas :  
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.  
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogit, mea dicta tenebit ;  
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.  
Disce, puer, quæso ; noli dediscere quicquam :  
Ne mens te insimulet conscientia desidix.  
Sisque animo attentus : quid enim docuisse juvabit,  
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas ?  
Nil tam difficile est quod non solertia vincat :  
Invigila, & parta est gloria militiæ.  
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina prosert,  
Ni sit continuo victa labore manus.  
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum,  
Tempus & amittit, spem simul ingenii.  
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,  
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.  
Incubens studio, submissa voce loqueris ;  
Nobis dum reddit, voce canorus eris.  
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem ;  
Singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.  
Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum ;  
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.  
Si quicquam rogito, sic respondere studebis,  
Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.  
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ ;  
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.  
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè ;  
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.  
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,  
Instruc ; & ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

6      *GVL. LILII Carmen, &c.*

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,  
Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.  
Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,  
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii :  
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore est,  
Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.  
Grammaticas recte si vis cognoscere leges,  
Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui :  
Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,  
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.  
Nunc te Virgilium, nunc ipse Terentius optat,  
Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus :  
Quos qui non didicit, nil praeter somnia vidit,  
Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.  
Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestae  
Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere :  
Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus, pedibusve sodales,  
Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo :  
Est aliis, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,  
Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus.  
Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum :  
Ne tandem factis premia digna feras.  
Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,  
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.  
Insuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,  
Mitte aliis ; puerum nil nisi pura decent.  
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furtæ, cachinni,  
Sint procul à vobis ; Martis & arma procul.  
Nil penitus dices, quod turpe, aut non sit honestum :  
Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.  
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,  
Jurare aut magni nonina sacra Dei.  
Denique servabis res omnes atque libellos,  
Et tecum quoties isque redisque, feres.  
Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,  
In quibus & nobis displicuisse potes.

# IVSII CATONIS Disticha de Mori- ad filium:

*a de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scaligeri, ejusdemque  
afsmi, P. Scriverrii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii Notas & Ca-  
ones, à T. R.*

In usum Scholarum.

*Illis que cecinit Themis aut Thymbraeus Apollo,  
Non canit hicce catus deteriora Cato.*

*Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.*

n animadverterem quām plurimos homines graviter er-  
re in via morum, succurrendum & consulendum e-  
dioni existimavi, maximè ut gloriōsè viverent; & ho-  
bontingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pa-  
ris animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legi-  
telligas: Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere est.

c Deo supplica.	Mutuum dato.
ntes ama.	Cui des videto.
s cole.	In judicium adesto.
m metue.	Conjugem ama.
erva.	Liberos erudi.
para.	Patere legem quam ipse tule- ris.
nis ambula.	Pauca in convivio loquere.
lium ne accesseris, an-	Convivare rarò.
n voceris.	Quod satis est dormi.
esto.	Jusjurandum serva.
enter.	Vin⁹ te tempera.
cede.	Pugna pro patria.
parce.	Nil temere credideris.
m custodi.	Tu te consule.
diam serva.	Meretricem fuge.
am adhibe.	Literas disce.
ege.	Nihil mentiri debes.
eris memento.	Bonis benefacito.
i cura.	Maledicus ne esto.
esto.	Exsultationem reine.
re noli.	Aequum judica.
i irriferis.	Parentes patientia vince.
ne irriferis.	

Beneficii accepti memor esto.	Aleas fuge.
Ad prætorium statu.	Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.
Consultus esto.	Minorem te ne contempseris.
Utere virtute.	Aliena concupiscere noli.
Iracundiam tempera.	Illud stude quod justum est.
Trocho lude.	Amorem libenter fert.

## *DISTICHO RVM de Moribus,*

### L I B E R I.

*Dei cultus præcipius.*

**S**I Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,  
Hic tibi præcipue sit pura mente colendus.  
*Somnolentia vitanda.*

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto :  
Nam diuturna quies viuis alimenta ministrat.  
*Cobibenda lingua.*

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam ;  
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.  
*Sibi ipsi conveniendum.*

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse :  
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.  
*Nemo temere culpandus.*

Si vitam inspicias hominum si denique mores,  
Cùm culpas alios ; nemo sine crimine vivit.  
*Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.*

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque :  
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.  
*Mores pro tempore mutandi.*

Et † levis & constans, ut res expostulat, esto :  
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.  
*Uxori non semper assentendum.*

Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti :  
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.  
*Inflandum correctioni amici.*

Cùmque mores aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,  
Si tibi sit charus, neli desistere cœptis.  
*Stulti verbi non vincuntur.*

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis :  
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.  
*Amicus sibi quisque primus.*

*† al. Con-*  
*stans aut le-*  
*vis, repre-*  
*nante mali*  
*Diligere sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,*  
*Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.*

*Rumores spargere vetitum.*

umores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberis :  
am nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

*Fides aliena non promittenda.*

egn tibi promissam certò promittere noli :  
ara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur;  
*Judex quiisque sit sui.*

um te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento :  
lus aliis de te, quam tu tibi credere noli.

*Beneficiorum ratio.*

fficum alterius multis narrare memento :  
tque aliis cum tu benefeceris, ipse fileto.

*Senio bene gesta referenda.*

ultorum cum facta senex & dicta recenses,  
ac tibi succurrant, juvenis quae feceris ipse.

*Suspitionis labes.*

te cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur :  
onscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

*In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.*

um fueris felix, quae sunt adversa caveto :  
on eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

*Mors alterius non speranda.*

um dubia & fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,  
i morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

*Animus in dono estimandus.*

xignum munus cum dat tibi pauper amicus,  
ccipito placide, plenè & laudare memento.

*Paupertas toleranda.*

ifantem nudum cum te natura creabit,  
iuptatis onus patienter ferre memento.

*Mors non formidanda.*

e timeas illam, quae vitae est ultima finis :  
ui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

*Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.*

tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,  
cusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coerce.

*Frugalitas.*

e tibi quid defit quæsitus utere parcè :  
tque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putato.

*Promissio iterata molesta.*

uod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli :  
e sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

*Ars arte deludenda.*

u simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus :  
quoque fac simile ; sic ars deluditur arte.

*Distichorum CATONIS**Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare :  
 Fistula dulcè canit, volucrem dum decipit aucepse.

*Liberi artibus instruendi.*

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes ; tunc artibus illos  
 Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

*Res quomodo estimande.*

Quod vile est, carum ; quod carum est, vile putato :  
 Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habeberis ulli.

*Culpata non facienda.*

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse :  
 Turpe est doctori cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

*Concedenda petenda.*

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum :  
 Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

*Nota ignotis non commutanda.*

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis :

Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

*Dies quisque supremus putandus.*

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,  
 Pro lucro tibi pone diem + quoquacunque laboras.

*Obsecundandum amicis.**+ al.  
cunque*

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali :  
 Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

*Amicitia mutua officia.*

Ne dubites, cùm magna petes, impendere parva :  
 His etenim rebus conjungit Gratia charos.

*Amicitia rixas odi.*

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est :  
 Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

*Caſtigatio fine ira.*

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,  
 Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

*Patientia vincendum.*

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo :  
 Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

*Questio fuit servanda.*

Conserua potius, quæ sunt jām parta labore :  
 Cum labor in danno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

*Consulendum sibi in primis.*

Dapsilis interdum notis, & charus amicis.

Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

## L I B . II . P R A E F A T I O .

**T**elluris si forte velis cognoscere cultus,  
Virgilium legito. Quod si mage nosse laboras.  
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,  
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.  
i Romana cupis & civica noscere bella,  
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.  
i quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendō,  
Naſonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,  
It sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,  
Per quæ ſemotum vitiis traducitur ævum.  
Ergo ades, & quæ ſit fapientia diſce legendo.

### *De omnibus bene merendum.*

**S**i potes, ignotis etiam prodeſſe memento :  
Utilius regno eſt meritis acquirere amicos.

*Arcana Dei non ſcrutanda.*

Fitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid ſit :  
Cum ſis mortalis, quæ ſunt mortalia cura.

*Mortis timor gaudia vite pellit.*

Linque naetum lethi, nam ſtultum eſt tempore in omni,  
Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

*Iracundia cavenda.*

ratus de re incertâ contendere noli :  
impedit ira animum ne poſſit cernere verum.

*Expendendum ubi opus eſt.*

Fac ſumptum properè, cum res deſiderat ipsa :  
Dandum etenim eſt aliiquid, cum tempus poſtulat aut rea.

*Fortuna modica tutior.*

Quod nimium eſt fugito, parvo gaudere memento :  
Futa mage eſt puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

*Occulta vitia reticenda.*

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento :  
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi diſplicet uni.

*Occulta tandem revelantur.*

Ne putes pravos homines peccata lucrari :  
Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore † parent. † i. e. app-

*Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.*

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli :  
Onſilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

*Cedendum potiori ad tempus.*

ut ſciēris non eſſe parem te, tempore cede  
ictorem à victo ſuperari ſæpe videmus.

rent, vulgo  
patent, ci  
tra metri  
gem.

*Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.*

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis :

Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit,

*Fortuna non querenda sorte.*

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte :

Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse,

*Laxus odium generat.*

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento :

Quæ si non laedit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

*Animus non deponendus ob iniquum judicium.*

Esto animo fortis, cum sis damnatus inique :

Nemo diu gaudet, qui judice vincit iniquo.

*Reconciliatis lis non refrianda.*

Litis præterita noli maledicta referre :

Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est :

*Tepsum neque lauda neque culpa.*

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse :

Hoc faciunt stulti; quos gloria vexat inanis.

*Parfimonia.*

Utere quæstis parcè, cum sumptus abundat :

Labitur exigu, quod partum est tempore longo.

*Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.*

Insipiens esto, cum tempus postulat, aut res :

Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

*Neque prodigus, neque avarus.*

Luxuriam fugito, simul & vitare memento

Crimen avaritiae ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

*Loquaci parum credendum.*

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper :

Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

*Ebrius vinum non accusat.*

Quæ † potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli :

Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

† al. po

*Amicis consilia credenda.*

Consilium arcum tacito committe sodali :

Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

*Successus malorum ne te offendat.*

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè :

Indulget fortuna malis ut laedere possit.

*Futuros casus previdendos.*

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos :

Nam levius laedit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

*Animus in adversis spe foveandus.*

*Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli:*

*Spem retine : spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.*

*Opportunitas cùm contingit tenenda.*

em tibi quam noscis aptam, dimittere noli :  
ronte capillata, post est occasio calva.

*Futura ex preteritis colligenda.*

quod sequitur specta, quodque imminet antè, videto,  
lum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

*Vite ratio habenda.*

ortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior esto :  
auca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

*Multitudini cedendum.*

udicium populi nunquam contempseris unus :  
le nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

*Valetudo curanda.*

it tibi præcipue, quod primum est, cura salutis :  
tempora ne culpes, cùm sis tibi causa doloris.

*Somnia non observanda.*

omnia ne cures : nam mens humana quod optat,  
dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

### L I B. III. P R Æ F A T I O.

**H**OC quicunque voles carmen cognoscere, lector,  
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,  
ommoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,  
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

*Dandam esse operam literis.*

**[**Nstrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses :  
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

*Moribus captanda fama.*

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento :  
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

*Recte agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.*

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum :  
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

*Anici crimen celandum.*

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,  
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

*Blandiloquentia suspecta.*

Ermones blandos blasphemique cavere memento :  
Implicitas veri † fana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

*Ignava vita fugienda.*

Egnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur :  
Nam cùm animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

*Animus fessus relaxandus.*

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis :  
Possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

† *Scal. fama,*

i. e. *indicium.*

al. *norma.*

*Mala animo neminem reprobendas.*

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpferis unquam :  
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

*Hereditas augenda.*

Quod tibi fors dederit tabulis supraea notato ;

Augendo serva ; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

*Senectus sit munifica.*

Cum tibi divitiae superant in fine senectae ;

Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

*Verba attendenda, non os loquentis..*

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,

Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempferis unquam.

*Presenti utendum fortunam.*

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit ante,

Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora praebent.

*Uxor spe dotis non querenda.*

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis :

Nec retinere velis, si coepirit esse molesta.

*Alieno sapere exemplo.*

Multorum disce exempla quae facta sequaris,

Quae fugias : vita est nobis aliena magistra.

*Nibil ultra vires.*

Quod potes, id tentes, operis ne pondere pressus

Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquis.

*Consentire videtur qui tacet.*

Quod nosti haud recte factum, nolito filere :

Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo..

*Rigor favore temperandus.*

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato :

Ipsae etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

*Feras que tua culpa pateris.*

Quod merito pateris, patienter ferre memento :

Cumque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

*Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.*

Multa legas facito : perfectis + perlege multa :

Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poetae.

+ al. negli

*Modestia in convivio loquendum.*

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus :

Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

*Inacundia uxoris non formidanda.*

Conjugis iratae nolito verba timere :

Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum foemina plorat.

*Quæsis utendum, non abutendum.*

*Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti :*

*Qui tua consumunt, cum deest, aliena sequuntur.*

# L I B E R IV.

45

*Mors non formidanda.*

c tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam :  
iæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

*Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.*

xoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento :  
amque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

*Pietas erga parentes.*

quâ diligo charos pietate parentes :  
ec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

## L I B. IV. P R Æ F A T I O.

**S**Ecuram quicunque cupis traducere vitam,

**N**ec vitiis hærere animum, quæ moribus obsunt ;  
iæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento :  
ivenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

*Divitiarum contemptus.*

† al. quo vi-  
tæ utare. al.  
tu te utare.

**D**Espice divitias, si vis animo esse beatis ;  
Quas qui, suspiciunt, mendicant semper, avari.

*Vivere secundum naturam optimum.*

ommoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,  
i contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

*Res ratione regenda.*

Cùm sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,  
Soli fortunam, quæ † nulla est, dicere cæcam. † al. non est.

*Amor pecunie ad usum.*

Dilige † denarium, sed parcè dilige formam, † al. denari.  
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat † habere. † al. ab ære.

*In valetudine ne opibus parcas.*

Quum fueris locuples corpus curare memento :  
Eger dives habet nummos, \* sed non habet ipsum. \* al. se.

*Castigatio paterpa ferenda.*

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,  
Ter patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

*Certa & utilia agenda.*

Res age quæ prosunt : rursus vitare memento  
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

*Libenter demandum.*

Quod donare potes, gratis † concede roganti : † al. ne vende.  
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte † lucrosum est. † al. lucrorum.

*Suspicio statim expendenda.*

Quod tibi suspectum est, confessim discute quid sit :  
Namque solent primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

*Genus abstinentia colibenda.*

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,  
Idulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est..

# Distichorum CATONIS

*Homo malus, serra pessima.*

Cum tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,  
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

*Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.*

Cum tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,  
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

*Amicus cordis medicus.*

Auxilium à notis petito, si forte laboras:  
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quām fidus amicus.

*Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.*

Cum sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te?  
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

*Amicus ex moribus deligendus.*

Cum tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,  
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

*Avaritia vitanda.*

Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:  
Quid tibi dixitæ profunt, si pauper abundas?

*Voluptas inimica fame.*

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;  
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitae.

*Senem etiam delirum ne irriteris.*

Cum sapias animo noli irridere senectam;  
Nam quicunque senet sensus puerilis in illo est.

*Opes fluxe, ars perpetua.*

Disce aliquid; nam cum subito fortuna recessit,  
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

*Mores ex verbis cogniti.*

Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur:  
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

*Ars usu juvanda.*

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:  
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.

*Vita contemptus.*

Multum ne cures venturi tempora fati:

Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

*Discendum & docendum.*

Disce, sed à doctis: indoctos ipse doceto:

Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

*Bibendi ratio.*

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:

Morbi causa mali nimia est \* quandoque voluptas.

*Nec damnes quod probaveris.*

\* al. que  
cunque.

Laudaris quodcunque palam, quodcunque probatis,

Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

*Circumspectus utrāque fortunā est.*

**T**ranquillis rebus quae sunt adversa + timeto : + al. caveto.

**R**ursus in adversis melius sperare memento.

*Studio crescit sapientia.*

**D**iscere ne cesses ; curā sapientia crescit :

**R**ara datur longo prudentia temporis usū.

*Parcē laudandum.*

Pareē laudato ; nam quem tu sēpe probāris,

Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.

*Discere non pudeat.*

Ne pudeat, quae nescieris, te velle doceri :

Scire aliquid laus est : + turpe est nil discere velle. + al. culpa.

*Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.*

Cum Venere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas :

Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

*Trifibis & tacitis non fidendum.*

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento :

Quā flumen placidum est, forsan latet altius undā.

*Sors sorti conferenda.*

Cūm tibi displiceat rērum fortuna tuarūm,

Alterius specta + quo sis discrimine pejor. + al. qui sis.

*Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.*

Quod potes id tenta : nam littus carpere remis,

Tutius est multò, quām + velis tendere in altum. + al. velum

*Cum justo iniquè non contendendum.*

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere noli :

Semper enim Deus iustitia utsciscitur iras.

*Fortuna utrāque aequ ferenda.*

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo :

Sed gaude potius, + tibi si contingat habere.

*Ab amico quid ferendum.*

Est jaictura gravis, quae sunt, smittere damnis :

Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patiēter anūcum.

*Tempori non confidendum.*

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ :

Quocunque ingredieris sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

*Deus quibus placandus.*

+ Thure Deum placa ; vitulam sine crescat aratro : + al. Ture.

Ne credas placare Deum, dum cœde litatur.

*A potentioribus lessus diffimula.*

Cede locum hæsus, fortunæ cede potenti :

Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit

*Castiga teipsum.*

Cūm quid peccāris, castiga te ipse subinde.

Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

## 18 JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.

*Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.*

Damnaris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum :  
Mutavit mores ; sed pignora prima memento.

*Beneficiis collatis attende.*

Gratior officiis, quo sis mage charior, esto ;  
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur † officiperda. † al. offici  
*Suspicionem tolle.*

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis :  
Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

*Humanitas erga servos.*

Cum fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,  
Ut servos dicas, horvines tamen esse memento.

*Occasionem rei commoda ne pretermittas.*

Quamprimum rapienda tibi est occasio prima,  
Ne rursus quereras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

*Non letandum repentina obitum.*

Morte repentina noli gaudere malorum :  
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

*Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.*

Cum tibi sit conjux, † ne res & fama laboret,  
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici. †

*Junge studium.*

Cum tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa ;  
Fac discas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri. † a

*Brevitas memoria amica.*

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus ?  
Hos brevitas sensus fecit conjugere binos.

---

## JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani, de ribus & Civilitate Puerorum, Carn.

**Q**uos decet in vita mores servare docemus,  
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.

Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva ;  
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.

Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus :  
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.

Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes :  
Et noceas nulli, surripiasque nihil.

Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto :  
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.

*Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtus,*  
*Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.*

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu :  
 Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.  
 Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit :  
 Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.  
 Parce & avaritiae ; bilem frænare meimento,  
 Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.  
 Fidus sis audensque bonis ; temerarius esse  
 Despice : non audax sis, timidusve nimis.  
 Esto verecundus : rectum te lectus habebit ;  
 Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.  
 Nec sis difficilis nimium, nimiumque severus,  
 Sed bonus & blandus conspiciare, puer.  
 Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem ;  
 Convenit ille toro, convenit iste foro.  
 Hæc te servantem vitæ laus spesque futuræ ;  
 Spernentem turpis pœnaque morsque manent.  
 Nunc faciles aures, animum quoque tradè serenum ;  
 Morigerare mihi, mollia justa dabo.  
 Sit sine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque ;  
 Stiria nec nalo pendeat ulla tuo.  
 Et nihil emineat, sint & sinè sordibus unguis ;  
 Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.  
 Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes ;  
 Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput ;  
 Exprimere & pulices, seabiemque urgere nocentem ;  
 Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet.  
 Seu spuis, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento  
 Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.  
 Mucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas ;  
 Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.  
 Et ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas ;  
 Stringe os, & crepitum comprime, quæso, puer.  
 Munditiæque tibi placeant ; medio quoque cultu  
 Uttere, ne turpis vel videare levis.  
 Non sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane ;  
 Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.  
 Nec vos ante focum coenæ producite longas ;  
 Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.  
 Nec sis vinosus, quamvis potâsse Catonem  
 Fama refert ; fugias sumere vina mera.  
 Namque cibys nimius, p̄tus quoque, maxima poena ;  
 Corporis & vires ingeniique rapit.

---

**2Q JOAN. SULPITII Carmen.**

Insternas mensam : nitidas imponito quadras,  
Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.  
Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benigno  
Suggerit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.  
Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel raro, sed astans  
Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.  
Juraque convivas super importare, minister,  
Effuge ; nam turpis saepe fit inde toga.  
Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito ;  
Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.  
Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,  
Te colla haec actas recta tenere jubet.  
Et sinito mensae cubitis hæcere potentes :  
Tu tantum faciles pone, repone manus.  
Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud  
Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.  
Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus ;  
Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.  
Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras  
Contractes fauces : mandere rite decet.  
Gausape non macules, aut pectus ; nec tibi mentum  
Stillet ; sitve tibi ne manus uncta cave.  
Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ.  
In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.  
Quod tibi vicinum fuerit tu sume ; sodali  
Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.  
Dumque in frusta secat, caveas sumplisse recisa :  
Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bojos.  
Non, manibus gremio immisisis, tibi vellicet unguis  
Quod fumes : residens non agitato pedes.  
Incidasque prius quam dens contundat osellam :  
Tingantur rursum ne tibi morsa cave.  
Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter offa,  
Ast ea cultello radere rite potes.  
Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, & ipsa  
Offa, vel in quadram, praedibuisse jace.  
Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguis delige frusta :  
Et quoque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.  
Nec socium torve inspicias, quidve ederit ille  
Advertas : gestus inspice saepe tuos.  
Pocula cum sumes, tergit tibi mappa labella :  
Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem  
 † Theseus, aut Beli sīt monumenta patris : † Vid. Ovid.  
 Hanc binis quid si manibus captabis, id aptē Met. 12. v. 235.  
 Efficies: digitis pocula sume tribus. & Virg. Aen. 1.  
 v. 733.

Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare :  
 Plepa aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.  
 Denie merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superfit,  
 Quod nolit socius sumere fortè tuus.  
 Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte salernum,  
 Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.  
 Haud facies binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,  
 Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis,  
 Nec citò sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati :  
 Nec nimium tardà sume salerna morā.  
 Unum, sive duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes ;  
 Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.  
 Fac videoas quodcunque bibes, modicūmque pitissa :  
 Crater, sive calix, det tibi vina, brevis.  
 Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula : palmas  
 Ablue, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.  
 Denique jam grates pro donis redditio Christo,  
 Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.  
 Inflectensque genu, jungens & bracia, PROSIT,  
 Dicito : mox tolles ordine quæque suo.

## REGIMENT MENSÆ honorabile.

*Nemo cibum capiat, donec Benedictio fiat.*

Dum manducatis,

Vultus hilares habeant  
 Sal cultello capia-  
 Quod edendum sit, ne peta-  
 Non nisi depositum capia-  
 Rixas & murmura fugia-  
 Manibus erectis fedea-  
 Mappam mundam tenea-  
 Ne scalpatis cavea-  
 Aliis partem tribua-  
 Mortuus non rejicia-  
 Modicum sed crebrò biba-  
 Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

tis.

*Privetur mensa, qui spreverit hæc documenta.*

F. I N I S.

## RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

*In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii & Spiritus Sancti, Amen.*

### ORATIO DOMINICA, Matth. -vi.

**P**ater noster, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificeatur nomen tuum. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut & nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in temptationem, sed libera nos à malo : Quia tuum est regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

### S Y M B O L U M A P O S T O L I C U M .

**C**redo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli & terræ: 2. Et in Jesum Christum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum, 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, & sepultus, descendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis, 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus est iudicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum Communionem. 10. Remissionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis resurrectionem, 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

---

### D E C A L O G U S , sive L E X D E I .

*Loquutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.*

**E**GO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, è domo servitutis;

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.  
II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque corras ea. *Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotus,*

## Rudimenta Pietatis.

2

vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordia utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, & observant præcepta mea

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanus usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operabis, & facies omne opus tuum. At septimo die Sabbathum eri Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec juventum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis sunt: requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit die Sabbati, & sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui

## SUMMA LEGIS, Matth. xxii. 34.

**P**harisei, quum audivissent quod JESUS silentium imposuit Sadduceis, congregati sunt pariter: 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, et dicens, 36. Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum est in lege:

37. JESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacraenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illæ?

Baptismus & sacra Cœna Domini.

**INSTITUTIO BAPTISMII:**

*Cujus hæc sunt Verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 15.*

**I**Te & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, servabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus usque ad consummationem seculi.

*Hæc promissio repetitur, cum Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. Tit. iii. 5. Act. xxii. 16.*

**INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI:**

*Cujus hæc sunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.*

**E**go enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidi vobis: Quod Dominus noster Jesus Christus eà nocte quâ preditus est, accepit panem: & gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit: *Accipite, manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum, postquam eoenasset, dicendo: *Hoc poculum est novum illud fædus per meum sanguinem: Hoc facite, quotiescumque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescumque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annuntiabitis, usque quod venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis & sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum, & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibt indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit & bibt, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

*Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cum inquit.*

**P**oculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis partes sumus.

# Summula CATECHISM.

## *Triplex hominis Status.*

1. } In sanctitate & sanitate.
2. } Sub peccato & morte.
3. } Sub Christi gratia.

**Q U A E S T I O.**

**Uis hominem creavit?**

**R e s p o n s o.** D E U S,

**Q ualem creavit eum?**

**R.** Sanctum & sanum, mun-  
ue dominum.

**Q.** In quem usum creatus est?

**R.** Ut Deo inserviret.

**Q.** Quod servitii genus ab eo  
gebat Deus?

**R.** Legis suæ præstationem.

**Q.** Num in legis Dei præsta-  
ne perstigit?

**R.** Nequaquam: sed eam for-  
transgressus est.

**Q.** Quæ hujus transgressionis  
ra?

**R.** Mors æterna, cum ani-  
z, tum corporis, & ipsi &  
steris.

**Q.** Quomodo inde liberamur?

**R.** Meritæ Dei gratiâ in Chri-  
Jesu, absque nostris meri-

**Q.** Cujusmodi persona est  
ristus?

**R.** Verè Deus, verèque ho-  
i, in persona una.

**Q.** Quomodo nos liberavit?

**R.** Morte suâ: mortem enim  
is debitam pro nobis subiit,  
ue eripuit.

**Q.** Num omnes liberantur per  
Christum?

**R.** Misericordia, sed ii tantum quæ  
fide eum amplectuptur.

**Q.** Quid est fides?

**R.** Cum mihi persuadeo De-  
um me omnèsque Sanctos ama-  
re, nobisque Christum cum o-  
mnibus suis bonis gratis dona-  
re.

**Q.** Recense summan tue fi-  
dei?

**R.** Credo in Deum, Patrem,  
&c.

**Q.** Quis operatur hanc fidem  
in nobis?

**R.** Spiritus Sanctus per Ver-  
bum & Sacramenta.

**Q.** Quomodo eam operatur per  
Verbum & Sacramenta?

**R.** Aperit cor, ut Deo lo-  
quenti in Verbo & Sacramen-  
tis credamus.

**Q.** Quid est Dei verbum?

**R.** Quicquid veteris ac novi  
Testamenti libris continetur.

**Q.** Verbi Dei quot partes?

**R.** Due, LEX & Evangelia.

**Q.** Quid est Lex?

**R.** Doctrina Dei, debitis  
a nobis exigens, & quia

## 26 SUMMULA CATECHISM

*sumus solvendo, damnans.*

*Q. Quid Euangelium?*

*R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.*

*Q. Quid Sacraenta?*

*R. Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.*

*Q. Quae hæc Christi bona?*

*R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio & vita æterna promant.*

*Q. Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacraenta?*

*R. Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cœna.*

*Q. Quid est Baptismus?*

*R. Sacramentum initiationis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.*

*Q. Quid initio nostri in Christum?*

*R. Unio nostri cum Christo; unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscencia.*

*Q. Baptismus quid juvat fidem?*

*R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi nos repurgari.*

*Q. Quid est sacra Cœna?*

*R. Sacramentum spiritualis*

*nutritionis nostræ in Christum.*

*Q. Cœna Domini quid fidem?*

*R. Testatur, ut pane & corpora nostra aluntur & scunt; sic animas nostræ pore & sanguine Christi fixi ali & corroborari ad æternam.*

*Q. Corpore & sanguini sti, quomodo alimur?*

*R. Dum fide percipit & Spiritus Sancti, quae adest, vi, ea nobis animus.*

*Q. Quando fide percipit & nobis applicamus corporis crucifixi?*

*R. Dum nobis persuadet Christi mortem & crucinem non minus ad nos nere, quam si ipsis predictis nostris crucifixi esset. Persuasio autem hæc est fidei.*

*Q. Vera fides quomodo scitur?*

*R. Per bona opera.*

*Q. Quomodo cognoscuntur opera?*

*R. Si Dei legi responsum.*

*Q. Recita Dei legem.*

*R. Audi Israel, Ego summinus, &c.*

*Q. Hæc lex de quibus monet?*

*R. De officio erga um, & erga proximum.*

*Q. Quid officii debes?*

*R. Supra omnes eum mem.*

Q. *Quid debes proximo?*

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. *Potis es hæc præstare?*

R. Minime gentium: nam tantisper dum hic vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. *In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?*

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. *In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?*

R. Assidue orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. *Quomodo orandum?*

R. Ut nos docuit Christu Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. *Qui tibi persuades, Deo donaturum quæ petis?*

R. Quia orare jussit, pollic tusque est, quicquid peterem Christi nomine, se mihi larg turum.

Q. *Quid debes Deo pro beneficiis?*

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuoque serviam.

Q. *Quomodo Deo servit dum?*

R. Ex verbi ipsius præcepto, ut jam dictum est.

---

*Principia Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.*

I. *De D E O.*

*Ioan. iv. 24.* **D**EUS est Spiritus.

*Apoc. iv. 8.* **S**anctus, sanctus, sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, & qui venturus est.

*Psal. cxlvii. 5.* Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium & sapientia ejus est immensa.

*Exod. xxxiv. 6.* —— **J**ehova, Jehovah Deus, misericors & ex rabilis, longanimus, & abundans benignitas & fidei.

*Vers. 7.* Custodiens misericordiam misericordie, condonans iniurias transgressionum & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

*Deut. vi. 4.* **J**ehova Deus noster est unus Jehovah.

*Ioan. v. 7.* Tres sunt qui testantur in cœlo, Pater, Sermo & Spiritus Sanctus; & hi tres sunt unum.

II. *De creatione, lapsu, peccato, & miseriâ Hominis.*

*Gen. i. 26.* **E**T Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secundum similitudinem nostram.

*Vers. 27.* Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum.

*Ecl. vii. 29.* Deus fecit hominem rectum.

*Rom. v. 12.* Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & me per peccatum: & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccarunt.

*Rom. iii. 23.* Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloria Dei.

*Psal. li. 5.* En formatus sum in iniuitate, & in peccato mater mea concepit me.

### III. De redēptione generis humāni per Iesum Christum.

*Joan. iii. 16.* DEUS sic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium suum unigenitum, ut quisquis credit in eum, non pereat, sed habeat vitam æternam.

*I. Jo. iv. 9.* Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quod Deus misit filium suum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

*V. 10.* In hoc est amor, non quod hos dilexerimus Deum, sed quod ipse dilexerit nos, & misericordia filium suum, ut esset piaculum pro peccatis nostris.

*I. Pet. iii. 18.* Christus quoque passus est semel pro peccatis, justus pro iniquis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

*I. Pet. ii. 24.* Qui ipse net sustulit peccata nostra in suo corpore super lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus justitiae; cuius vibicibus salvati sumus.

*Tit. ii. 14.* Qui dedit seipsum pro nobis ut redimeret nos ab omni iniuitate, & purificaret sibi ipsi populum peculiarem, accensum studio bonorum operum.

### IV. De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut salutem per Christum consequamur.

*A&R. xvi. 30.* DIXIT, Domini, quid faciendum est mihi, ut sim salvus?

*Ver. 31.* Etillidixerunt, Crede in Dominum Iesum, & salvuseris.

*A&R. iii. 19.* Resipisci, & convertimini, ut peccata vestra delectantur, cum tempora recreationis venient à conspectu Domini.

*Isa. lv. 6.* Quærite Jehovam dum possit inveniri; invocate eum dum est propinquus.

*Vers. 7.* Improbus derelinquit viam suam, & vir iniquus cogitationes suas; revertaturque ad Jehovam, & miserebitur illius; & ad Deum nostrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

*Luc. ix. 23.* Si quis vult venire post me, ipse abneget se, tollatque suam crucem quotidie, & sequatur me.

*Math. xi. 28.* Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati esitis, & ego recreabo vos.

*Ver. 20.* Attollite jugum meum in vos, & discite à me, quia mitis sum & humili corde; & invenietis requiem animabus vestris.

*Ver. 30.* Jugum enim meum est facile, & onus meum est leve.

*Heb. v. 9.* Perfectus factus est auctor salutis æternae omainbus obedientibus sibi.

*Io. xiv. 15.* Si amatis me, servate præcepta mea.

*Io. xv. 14.* Vos ells amici mei, si feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

*Tit. ii. 11.* Gratia Dei, quæ salutem adserit, apparuit omnibus hominibus.

*Ver. 12.* Erudiens nos, ut, abnegata impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus sobriè, justè, & piè in hoc præsenti seculo.

*Mic. vi. 8.* Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid sit bonum; & quid exigit Jehova à te, nisi ut æquum facias, & ames misericordiam, & ambules submissè cum Deo tuo?

*Col. iii. 5.* Mortificate igitur vestra membra terrestria; scortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ ellidolatria:

*Ver. 6.* Propterea quæ ira Dei venit super filios contumaces.

*Ver. 8.* Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescientiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obsecrātatem verborum **ex ore vestro**.

*Ver. 9.* Ne mentimini alii aliis.

*Ver. 12.* Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti amatique) viscera misericordie, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiam.

*Ver. 13.* Sufferentes alii alios, & condonantes alii alios: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

*Ver. 14.* Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

*1 Thes. iv. 11.* Et ut studeatis esse quieti, & agere res vestras, & operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

*1 Pet. ii. 27.* Timete Deum, honorate regem.

*Rom. xiii. 1.* Omnis anima est subiecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ à Deo

*Ver. 2.* Itaque quisquis obseruit potestati, obseruit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obserunt, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

*1 Thes. v. 12.* Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, & præsumt vobis in Domino, & adinonenter vos.

*Ver. 13.* Et faciatis eos maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum

*Heb. i. 17.* Parete gubernatoribus vestris, & obsequimini, nam in vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam redditum rationem; ut faciant id cum gaudio, & non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

*Col. iii. 18.* Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

*V. 19.* Viri, diligite uxores, & ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

*Eph. vi. 1.* Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim sequum est.

*V. 4.* Et vos patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educatq; eos in disciplina & admonitione Domini.

*Col. iii. 22.* Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

*V. 23.* Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino & non hominibus.

*Col. iv. 1.* Domini, præstate jus & æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cœlis.

*Matth. vii. 12.* Quæcumque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis vos facite etiam ita eis.

*Matth. xxiv. 13.* Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

*Gal. vi. 9.* Ne desetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore me temus, si non fatigemur.

*Apoc. ii. 10.* Esto fideliſ usque ad mortem, & dabo tibi coronam vita-

### V. De necessitate hæc præstandi:

*Io. iii. 36.* **Q**ui credit in filium, habet vitam æternam; qui vero non credit filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

*Luc. xiii. 3, 5.* Nisi resipiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

*Ezek. xxxiii. 11.* Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, ut non deliquerit morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, & vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris, cur enim moreremini?

*Ezek. xviii. 30.* Resipiscite, & avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris, ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

*V. 31.* Abjicite à vobis omnes transgressiones vestras, quibus transg

*S*icut & facite vobis eorū novum, & spiritum novum, nam quare moreremini?  
*V.* 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova; converte igitur vos, & vivite.

*Jo.* iii. 3.—Nisi quis denuō natus fuerit, non potest videre regnum Dei.  
*Matt.* xviii. 3. Niū convertamini, & siatis ut pueruli, non intrabitū in regnum cœlorum.

*Luc.* vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, & non facitis quæ dico.

*Heb.* xii. 14. Seztamini pacem cum omnibus, & sanctimoniam, sine qua nemo videbit Dominum.

*I Cor.* vi. 9. An ignoratis injustos non esse possessuros regnum Dei? Ne errate, neque scortatores, nec idololatæ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec padicones.

*Ver.* 10. Nec fures, nec avari, nec ebriosi, nec conviciatores, nec rapaces, possidebunt regnum Dei.

*Heb.* x. 38.—Si quis se subtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

**VI. De mōlis obtainendi gratiam à Dō, viresque ad hæc facienda.**

*Luc.* xi. 9. **P**Etite & dabitur vobis, quærите & invenietis, pulsate & aperietur vobis.

*Ver.* 10. Quisquis enim petit, accipit; & qui quærerit, invenit; & aperietur pulsanti.

*V.* 13. Si vos, qui mali estis, sciatis dare bona dona vestris liberis; quanto magis Pater vester cœlestis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus à se?

*I Pet.* iii. 21. Cui rei confimilis figura, nempe Baptismus, nunc quoque servat nos, non detracatio sordium corporis, sed stipulatio bonæ conscientiæ apud Deum, per resurrectionem Iesu Christi.

*I Cor.* xi. 23. Dominus Iesus cā nocte qua proditus est, accepit panem,

*Ver.* 24. Et gratis actis, fregit ac dixit, Accipite, comedite, hoc est meum corpus quod frangitur pro vobis, hoc facite ad memoriam mei.

*V.* 25. Itidem accepit poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicens; Hoc poculum est novum fœdus per fncum sanguinem, hoc facite, quoties bibetis, ad memoriam mei.

*V.* 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, & biberitis poculum hoc, annunciatis mortem domini donec veniat.

*I Cor.* x. 16. Porcum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne est communio sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne est communio corporis Christi?

*Psal.* cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purisicabit semitam suam? observando eam secundum verbum tuum.

*V.* 11. Recondidi sermonem tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in te.

*V.* 59. Recognovi meos mores, & converti pedes meos ad tua testimonia.

*V.* 60. Festinavi, ac non cunctatus sum, observare mandata tua.

*Prov.* iii. 5. Confide Jehovæ toto corde, neve innitere tuz prudentias.

*V.* 6. Agnosce eum in omnibus viis tuis, & is diriget gressus tuos.

**VII. De quatuor ultimis, viz. de Morte & Judicio, Cælo & Inferno.**

*Heb.* ix. 27. **S**tatum est omnibus hominibus ut semel moriantur, postea verò judicium.

*Joan.* v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui sunt in monumentis & indicent ejus vocem.

